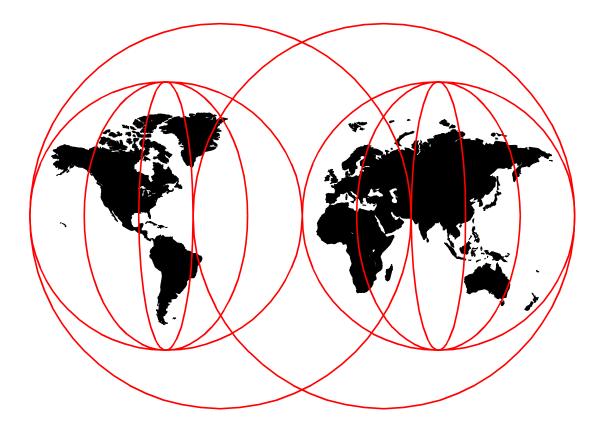


# **Netfinity Director - Integration and Tools**

Barry Nusbaum, Manfred Ertl, Johann Klotz, Carsten Lund



## **International Technical Support Organization**

www.redbooks.ibm.com



International Technical Support Organization

SG24-5389-00

## **Netfinity Director - Integration and Tools**

February 2000

#### Take Note!

Before using this information and the product it supports, be sure to read the general information in Appendix B, "Special notices" on page 309.

#### First Edition (February 2000)

This edition applies to Version 1.0 of Netfinity Director, for use with the Windows operating sytems.

#### Note -

This book is based on a pre-GA version of a product and may not apply when the product becomes generally available. We recommend that you consult the product documentation or follow-on versions of this redbook for more current information.

Comments may be addressed to: IBM Corporation, International Technical Support Organization Dept. HZ8 Building 678 P.O. Box 12195 Research Triangle Park, NC 27709-2195

When you send information to IBM, you grant IBM a non-exclusive right to use or distribute the information in any way it believes appropriate without incurring any obligation to you.

#### © Copyright International Business Machines Corporation 2000. All rights reserved.

Note to U.S Government Users - Documentation related to restricted rights - Use, duplication or disclosure is subject to restrictions set forth in GSA ADP Schedule Contract with IBM Corp.

## Contents

Preface	
The team that wrote this redbook	
Comments welcome	vii
Chanter 1 Notfinity Director functions	
Chapter 1. Netfinity Director functions	
1.1 Netfinity Director base functions	
1.2 Netfinity Director additional features	
1.2.1 Life Cycle Tools	
1.3 Our environment	
1.4 Standards	
1.4.1 Implementations	
1.4.2 What is CIM and why is it important?	
1.4.3 What is XML and why is it important?	
1.4.4 SNMP's role	
1.4.5 How is DMI used?	.33
1.4.6 WFM 2.0	.34
Charter 2 Installation and sustamization	<u>-</u>
Chapter 2. Installation and customization	
2.2 Installation of the Netfinity Director Server	
2.2.1 Prerequisites for Netfinity Director Server	
2.2.2 Installation procedure for Netfinity Director Server	
2.2.3 Uninstall Netfinity Director	
2.2.4 Install Netfinity Director Console	
2.2.5 Uninstall Netfinity Director Console	
2.2.6 Install Netfinity Director Client	
2.2.7 Uninstall Netfinity Director Client	
2.3 Supporting Netfinity Director clients	
2.3.1 How to use the Netfinity Director Client	
2.4 NetWare V5.0 agents	
2.4.1 Prerequisites for Netfinity Director Client on NetWare V5.0	
2.4.2 Installation procedure for Netfinity Director Client on NetWare V5.0	
2.4.3 Uninstall Netfinity Director Client on NetWare V5.0	.68
Chapter 3. Core functions	7-
3.1 Netfinity Director environment	
3.1.1 Logging on for the first time	
3.1.2 The console	
3.1.3 The menus	
3.1.4 Configuration and preferences	
3.2 Base functions	
3.2.1 Inventory management	
3.2.2 CIM compliant.	
3.2.3 DMI compliant.	
3.2.4 Resource monitoring	
3.2.5 File transfer	
3.2.6 Remote control	
3.2.7 Task scheduling	
3.2.8 Process management	.95
3.2.9 Event management and logging1	104
3.3 Group management1	105

3.3.1 The different groups         3.3.2 Planning management tasks with groups	
Chapter 4. Netfinity Director tools4.1 Installation of Life Cycle Tools4.1.1 Extensions4.2 Life Cycle Tools4.2.1 Advanced System Manager4.2.2 Capacity Manager4.2.3 Cluster Manager4.2.4 IBM Netfinity SP Switch Manager4.2.5 ServeRAID Manager4.2.6 Configure Alert on LAN4.2.7 Asset ID4.2.8 LANClient Control Manager	164 169 173 174 180 181 185 186 190 191
Chapter 5. Database support       5.1         5.1 Working with the default queries       5.2         5.2 Working with DBMS       2         5.2.1 IBM DB2 V5.2 installation       2         5.2.2 Microsoft SQL V7.0 installation       2         5.3 Working with DBMS tables       2         5.3.1 Making your own database queries       2         5.4 Working with ODBC       2	199 201 201 206 213 218
Chapter 6. Netfinity Director and Netfinity Manager6.1 Running Netfinity Director and Netfinity Manager together.6.1.1 MPM support.6.2 Comparing Netfinity Director tasks to Netfinity Manager tasks6.2.1 CIM Browser6.2.2 DMI browser6.2.3 Event Action plans.6.2.4 File Transfer6.2.5 Inventory6.2.6 Microsoft Cluster Browser6.2.7 Process management6.2.8 Remote control6.2.9 Resource Monitors.6.2.10 Software distribution6.3 Accessing older UMA clients	235 235 242 243 244 247 264 267 270 271 275 276 285
Appendix A. Netfinity Director tables	289 289 290 290 290 291 291 291

A.13 IP address	294
A.14 IPX address	294
A.15 Keyboard	294
A.16 LAN network ID 2	295
A.17 Logical drive	295
A.18 Logical memory	296
A.19 Memory modules	296
A.20 Motherboard	297
A.21 Network adapter 2	297
A.22 On-board device	297
A.23 Operating system	298
A.24 Parallel port	298
A.25 Partition	299
A.26 PCI device	299
A.27 Physical enclosure	300
A.28 Pointing device	300
A.29 Printer	301
A.30 Processor	301
A.31 SCSI adapter	302
A.32 SCSI device	303
A.33 Serial port	303
A.34 Software	304
A.35 System	304
A.36 System BIOS	305
A.37 System location	305
A.38 System resource	306
A.39 System user	306
A.40 Video	307
Appendix B. Special notices	309
Appendix C. Related publications	
C.1 International Technical Support Organization publications	
C.2 IBM Redbooks collections	
C.3 Referenced Web sites 3	511
How to get IBM Redbooks	13
IBM Redbooks fax order form	
	, 1- <del>т</del>
Index	315
IBM Redbooks evaluation	317

## Preface

This redbook will help you install, tailor and configure Netfinity Director in a Windows NT environment. It provides details on the Server, Console and Client components that are distributed with Netfinity Director. The Client component was introduced in an earlier redbook, *Universal Manageability: Enterprise Management Integration,* SG24-5388. This new redbook uses that as a base for explaining how all of the functions integrate together to provide a cohesive management platform for the Windows 32-bit operating systems.

This book can be used by systems integrators or planners to help establish a new framework for systems management. The step-by-step approach taken in each chapter helps the novice see and understand how each function works.

This book also helps position Netfinity Manager customers for their eventual migration to this new product.

## The team that wrote this redbook

This redbook was produced by a team of specialists from around the world working at the International Technical Support Organization, Raleigh Center.

**Barry Nusbaum** is a Consulting International Technical support representative at the International Technical Support Organization, Raleigh Center. He writes extensively and teaches IBM classes worldwide on all areas of systems management on the NT and AIX platform. He is also currently working on projects related to the e-business Application Framework and WebSphere. Before joining the ITSO seven years ago, he worked in Professional Services in the United States as a National Communications Specialist. You can reach him by e-mail at bnusbaum@us.ibm.com.

**Manfred Ertl** is a pre-sales System Engineer with Netfinity Server Systems in Germany. He teaches technical courses on the IBM Netfinity Server to Business Partners. He also teaches the marketing sales representatives of Business Partners during large marketing events. He has 23 years of IBM experience, the last five with the Personal Systems Group. Before he joined the Netfinity pre-sales team he worked at the IBM education center and later he was the Country Program Manager for the PC Institute in Germany. You can reach him by e-mail at ertl@de.ibm.com.

**Johann Klotz** is a pre-sales Netfinity Servers System Engineer for the Personal System Group in France. He has been working for IBM since 1997. His areas of expertise include Netfinity servers, operating systems, and technical support.

**Carsten Lund** is a pre-sales Netfinity Servers System Engineer in Denmark. He has worked for IBM since 1991, where he has worked for the Personal System Group since 1997. He also teaches PC Institute courses. His areas of expertise include Netfinity servers, systems management and database systems.

Thanks to the following people for their invaluable contributions to this project:

Margaret Ticknor, Shawn Walsh, David Watts International Technical Support Organization, Raleigh Center Julianne Bielski, David Feisthammel, Eric Rasmussen, Goran Wibran IBM RTP

Yvonne Couderc, Stephan Hilby, Gilles Piedeloup IBM France

## **Comments welcome**

#### Your comments are important to us!

We want our redbooks to be as helpful as possible. Please send us your comments about this or other redbooks in one of the following ways:

- Fax the evaluation form found in "IBM Redbooks evaluation" on page 317 to the fax number shown on the form.
- Use the online evaluation form found at http://www.redbooks.ibm.com/
- Send your comments in an internet note to redbook@us.ibm.com

## **Chapter 1. Netfinity Director functions**

This chapter provides an overview of the base Netfinity Director functions. We show what Netfinity Director is, the main management tasks it can perform, and the management standards it utilizes.

## **1.1 Netfinity Director base functions**

Netfinity Director is the IBM systems management software that is used to manage small-to-medium-size environments that consist of servers, workstations and mobile systems. While the immediate focus is on newer IBM hardware, you can use the software developers kit (SDK) that is available with Netfinity Director to add support for older hardware as well as non-IBM hardware. It can run on the same system as Netfinity Manager and it allows you to perform many different systems management tasks with the goal of reducing the total cost of ownership (TCO). It is likely that it will replace Netfinity Manager sometime in the future.

There are two versions of Netfinity Director, a light and a full one. When you install the product, you have to a enter a license key. The license key determines if you will install the light or the full version. The full version adds the following features:

- An SNMP browser
- The ability to perform Software Distribution
- · Expanded group management functions
- Application management
- Internet services
- Support for an AS/400 server

For example, you can enable Event Actions Plans for an entire group. See 3.3.2.1, "Event action plans" on page 118, for more information on Event Action Plans.

Netfinity Director is divided into three components:

- 1. Each system that is managed has an agent, including the system that is the management server.
- The server component is the central task that collects management information from the agents and controls the security privileges of administrators.
- A console is provided to connect to the server (using TCP/IP only) and provides an administrator-specific graphical interface to the management and administration tasks.

Following is a list of the main Netfinity Director features:

- Inventory management
- CIM compliance
- DMI compliance
- Resource monitoring
- File transfer
- Remote control

- Task scheduling
- Process management
- Event Management and logging
- Cluster Browser for MicroSoft Cluster Server (MSCS) systems
- Managing Netfinity Manager MPM Agents

These functions and their configuration are discussed in Chapter 3, "Core functions" on page 71.

## **1.2 Netfinity Director additional features**

The Netfinity Director characteristics we discussed in 1.1, "Netfinity Director base functions" on page 1 are hardware independent. They are available for managing IBM or non-IBM hardware. However, IBM provides a set of additional tools (called Life Cycle Tools) specific to its Intel-based systems. We explain these tools in the following section.

#### 1.2.1 Life Cycle Tools

Life Cycle Tools (LCT) are add-on software components that help systems administrators or help-desk technicians manage their tasks. They are called Life Cycle Tools because they can be used at various stages in the life of a managed system (for example, during setup, operating system installation, management or administration).

We can distinguish between two kinds of LCT: those that are dedicated to server administration and those that are used to manage clients systems (desktops, mobiles and graphical workstations).

Server Life Cycle Tools	UMS Desktop Extensions		
Cluster Manager	CMOS Configurator		
Capacity Manager	Alert on LAN		
RAID Manager	CoSession Remote 32		
Update Connector Manager	PC Doctor		
Advanced System Management	ConfigSafe		
LAN Client Control Manager	CMOS Configurator		

Table 1. List of Life Cycle Tools

#### 1.2.1.1 Server Life Cycle Tools

With IBM Netfinity Servers you can use a Service Processor or an Advanced Management Adapter, which allows you to control Netfinity Servers remotely, even if a system is powered off. The Advanced System Management tool helps you perform the management actions. For examples and more details see 4.2.1, "Advanced System Manager" on page 174. Note that the direct connection to the Service Processor is not implemented yet.

Capacity Manager is a Java-based utility with which you can monitor and track the use of your systems resources on different target computers. The results of this monitoring can be displayed graphically. Capacity Manager provides a forecasting tool which, based on the collection of data during a 21-day period (minimum), will tell you when utilization of system resources might become critical on the monitored systems. It provides a wizard which helps determine bottlenecks and provides some recommendations about what actions to take in such events. For examples and more details see 4.2.2, "Capacity Manager" on page 180.

The Cluster Manager is also known as IBM System Cluster Manager (ICSM). It is a graphical tool which allows you to monitor the status of the different nodes on different Microsoft clusters. It also provides some wizards to help manage the resources and the groups of the clusters. For examples and more details see 4.2.3, "Cluster Manager" on page 181.

With the RAID Manager, you can remotely obtain an overview of the RAID configuration of a server (for example, you can see the number of RAID adapters, levels of firmware used, and the RAID configuration elements, such as stripe size). Based upon the data you see with the RAID Manager, you can take some actions, such as adding or removing some logical drives, using the Logical Drive Migration (which changes the RAID level of an array), or increasing the size of an array. For examples and more details see 4.2.5, "ServeRAID Manager" on page 186.

#### 1.2.1.2 Cross-Brand Life Cycle Tools

Cross-Brand Life Cycle Tools are those that apply across all IBM brands: Netfinity servers, Intellistation workstations, PC 300s and ThinkPads.

By accessing UM Services with a Web browser, the MMC, or the Netfinity Director Console, you have the opportunity to access or define information related to all of the equipment that is supported by the Cross-Brand Life Cycle Tools. It integrates all of the tools into a single Netfinity Director GUI.

#### Alert on LAN

Alert on LAN is a hardware and software technology implemented in a computer and its network adapter, to enable the system to transmit an alert from a DMI-compliant manageability chip even when the system is powered off. This technology has been co-developed by IBM and Intel, within the framework of the IBM/Intel Advanced Manageability Alliance.

You can find extensive information on Alert on LAN and IBM/Intel Advanced Manageability Alliance at the following URLs:

http://www.pc.ibm.com/us/desktop/alertonlan/index.html.

http://www.intel.com/network/network\_strategy/aol.htm

An example of an application for this is when someone removes the processor of a computer. An initial alert is sent to the administrator console, because the chassis had been removed, and a second alert is also sent because the processor itself was removed.

Thus, Alert on LAN helps you to:

- Protect your assets, by notifying you of hardware configuration changes.
- Reduce response times. Alert on LAN allows you to respond without waiting for the user to complain about a system change, thus maintaining their productivity.

Alert on LAN 2, which was incorporated into selected IBM network devices in 1999, will extend these capabilities, by allowing the network administrator to send a corrective action to the client system (for example, a reboot request if the system is hung).

Currently, Alert on LAN can notify you of the following system changes:

- System unplugged from power source
- System unplugged from network
- · Chassis intrusion
- · Processor removal
- System environmental errors (high temperatures, fan speed or voltage fluctuations)
- · Operating systems error
- System power-on errors
- System is hung

#### How it works

An Alert on LAN system needs three key components:

- 4. An Alert on LAN motherboard
- 5. A BIOS implementing this technology
- 6. An Alert on LAN network adapter

Even when a system is powered down, two kind of packets are sent by the computer: some status packets, generated at regular intervals (called a heartbeat timer period) that informs the manager of the health of the system (for example, temperature or voltage), and some alert packets that are sent when an error occurs, for example, a chassis intrusion or an operating system error.

The system is never really powered down. The on/off switch just places it in a state where almost no power is used, but enough is used to allow the network adapter to send information packets. A complete shutdown of the computer requires you to unplug its power cord. At that point no more packets can be sent and the management software can alert the administrator that the remote computer is no longer responding.

**Note:** Alert on LAN is available from UM Services under the Configuration tab and the Configure Alert on LAN task in the Netfinity Director Console.

#### Supported systems

Currently, the Alert on LAN features are supported on the PC 300 PL (Models 6862 or 6892) with the on-board Ethernet 10/100 controller, or with the IBM token-ring with Alert on LAN (only one Wake on LAN device supported per system). Other supported systems are the Intellistation E Pro, M Pro, and Z Pro (Models 6893, 6889 and 6865), only with their embedded Ethernet 10/100 adapter. Lastly, the IBM PC 300 GL Models 6265, 6275, 6285 are supported with the IBM Token-Ring w/ Alert on LAN adapter.

To disable the on-board 10/100 Ethernet adapter of the 300 PL, change switch 1 position 6 from on to off.

**Note:** You can check the supported systems at:

http://www.pc.ibm.com/us/desktop/alertonlan/syssupport.html.

In order for this technology to be useful, system administrators need to use a management software that can detect Alert on LAN packets, for example, IBM Netfinity Manager, or Intel LANDesk Client Manager Administrator.

Information on management software can be retrieved from:

http://www.pc.ibm.com/us/desktop/alertonlan/softreqs.html.

Asset ID is a function that lets a system administrator write data on an EEPROM (embedded on the motherboard of the managed computer). The data can be related to the user of the system, or to some management item, such as the leasing information for the computer.

iem. 🧧	Next System	?
Information Tasks 9.24.106.130 Configuration Date & Time Network User Security Tools Web Links System Updates	Asset ID          Serialization       System       User       Lease       Asset       Personalization       Warranty         Lease       Start Date       August       11       1999       1         Lease       End Date       August       11       1999       1         Lease       End Date       August       11       1999       1         Lease       Term (Months)       36       1       1999       1         Lease       Amount       \$2000       1 <td< td=""><td></td></td<>	
💣 💷 🛛 Transfe	erring data from 9.24.106.130:411 💿 🗮 💥 📲 🍙 🦕	<b>č</b> /i.

Figure 1. Asset ID sample

Figure 1 shows an example of the Asset ID function. Other information can be related to the serial numbers for the main system's components (for example, motherboard, memory, processors, hard drives or power supply), or to the user. Some blank fields allow the system administrator to write any information he or she chooses to the Asset ID EEPROM.

By accessing UM Services with a Web browser or the MMC, you have the opportunity to define this information.

#### 1.2.1.3 UM Desktop Extensions

Most of the Desktop Life Cycle Tools are implemented in the UMS Desktop Extensions (discussed in 1.2.1.4, "UMS Desktop Extensions" on page 6). Some

are part of the base UM Services product. We discuss here these implemented in the base product.

Alert on LAN is more widely discussed in "Alert on LAN" on page 3. This feature allows a system administrator to be warned, for a compliant computer, of events such as the removal of some system's component, or chassis intrusion.

#### 1.2.1.4 UMS Desktop Extensions

The UMS Desktop Extensions are an additional layer of software added to UM Services. It extends the administration capabilities on the target on which it is installed. UM Services allow you to review and modify the configuration of a target system. The UMS Desktop Extensions bring you more powerful tools to take specific administration actions on the managed computer.

#### CMOS Configurator

This applet lets you modify some basic configurations elements of the system's BIOS. The changes are applied after the reboot of the target system. You can modify the power on and administrator passwords. If you set up passwords, you will need the passwords for any future modifications with this tool. In terms of other security concerns, other tabs of the CMOS configurator let you activate and deactivate the floppy and IDE controller, enable the AssetCare or Asset ID functions, or disable the keyboard on the target system at boot time during adapter ROM initialization.

You also have the opportunity to modify some power management settings. You can switch on or off:

- ACPI BIOS mode
- APM BIOS mode
- Wake on-LAN
- Modem ring detect
- PCI Wakeup
- Serial port A ring detect

#### Artisoft Remote Utilities

These utilities allow you to launch a graphical remote control, or a file transfer session between your station and the target machine.

Due to bandwidth considerations, you may want to modify the incoming display of the remote machine by modifying some display characteristics:

- Customize the screen resolution
- · Display the wallpaper or do not display it
- · Display the background patterns or do not display it
- Disable the screen saver
- Disable the active desktop
- Disable desktop animation

The rule of thumb for the best performance is easy to understand: the more options you have enabled, the slower the remote control. A recommended configuration would be to choose a custom resolution of 640 pixels, with 16 colors, and to leave the other options unchecked. On the other hand, if you are investigating a problem (such as a system hang or General Protection Fault) that you cannot easily reproduce, keep in mind that one of the conditions of the problem might be related to the presence of one of these configuration elements.

🖉 9.24.106.25 - Microsoft Internel	t Explorer
<u>File E</u> dit <u>V</u> iew <u>G</u> o F <u>a</u> vorites	<u>H</u> elp
Back Forward Stop	Image: Search Favorites     Image: Search Favorites     Image: Search Favorites     Image: Search Favorites
Address 🛃 http://9.24.106.25:411/in	ndex2.html
iem. 💼	Next System 🔛 😜 🥐
Information Tasks 9.24.106.25 Configuration Alert On LAN Asset ID Date & Time Asset ID Date & Time Asset ID User Security Cosession Remote ConfigSafe DMI Information EZ Admin EZ Admin Remote Control Shutdown Web Links System Updates	Artisoft Remote Utilities         Remote Control       File Transfer         HOST OPTIONS:       NOST OPTIONS:         Default Host Display Resolution       Send Wallpaper         Custom Host Display Resolution       Send Background Patterns         Horizontal Resolution:       Enable Screen Saver         640       Enable Active Desktop         256       Enable Desktop Animation         Start Remote Control       Start Remote Control
<u>ال</u>	le linternet zone

Figure 2. Remote Control options from the Artisoft Remote Utilities

**Note:** If you choose to modify some features, they will be changed on the remote machine. This is not an operation that is transparent to the user. For example, if you change the screen resolution from 800x600 to 640x480, the user will see their display change to 640x480.

To help save bandwidth, three options are available for file transfer:

- 1. Intelligent Transfer: Only the part of a file that has changed since the last transfer will be sent rather than the entire file.
- 2. Include Subdirectories: Transfers all of the subdirectories in a folder.
- 3. Keep Partial file: If the Intelligent Transfer option is checked, selecting this option will keep track of a file transfer and if it does not complete (for example, due to a time out), then it will be resumed when you re-launch the file transfer.

🖉 9.24.106.25 - Microsoft Internet	t Explorer	_ 🗆 ×
<u>File E</u> dit <u>V</u> iew <u>G</u> o F <u>a</u> vorites	s <u>H</u> elp	æ
Image: the second se	😚 🖆 😥 💌 🧭 👰 🖬 👘 Refresh Home Search Favorites History Channels Fullscreen Mail Print	
Address 🛃 http://9.24.106.25:411/in	ndex2.html	💌 🛛 Links
iem. 🖻	Next System	?
Information Tasks 9.24.106.25 Configuration Alert On LAN Asset ID Date & Time Network SNMP User Security Tools CoSession Remote ConfigSafe DMI Information EZ Admin EZ Admin PC-Doctor Remote Control Shutdown Web Links System Updates	Artisoft Remote Utilities         Remote Control       File Transfer         FILE TRANSFER OPTIONS:       Intelligent Transfer         Include Subdirectories       Include Subdirectories         Keep Partial File       Start File Transfer	
<b>@</b> ]	Conternet zone	

Figure 3. The File Transfer window

**Note:** If you selected the Web-based Remote Control option in the client configuration part of install, and then you install Artisoft Remote Utilities, Artisoft prevents the Remote Control tool from showing up.

#### ConfigSafe

ConfigSafe is a tool that maintains a snapshot of the Windows configuration files. Different snapshots can be archived with a date and time stamp.

**Note:** There is a DOS program called sos.exe, located in the CFGSAGE folder, which allows you to restore the system configuration files when the user cannot reboot the operating system.

#### EZ Admin

If you do not want your support team losing time and money on solving problems caused by a bad configuration change made by an end user, you can disable common features of the Windows operating systems. Based on the Microsoft systems' policies, you can perform the following actions:

Table 2. EZ Admin actions

EZ Admin tab	Actions available
Control Panel	Hide Display Settings tab
Shell and System	Remove Run Command from Start menu
	Hide Network Neighborhood
	Disable Save Settings at exit
	Remove the Task bar from settings on the Start Menu
	No entire Network in Network Neighborhood
	Disable Registry Editing Tools
Applications	Run a list of specified applications only

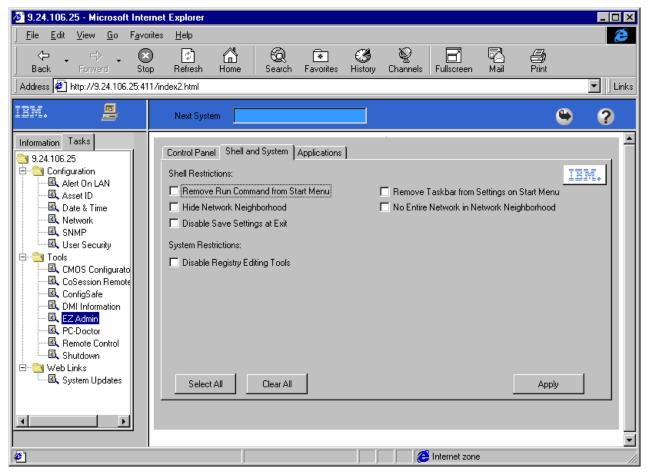


Figure 4. The EZ Admin Shell and System tab

#### **PC-Doctor**

PC-Doctor is a remote diagnostic tool. From the Web browser you can launch a series of tests related to storage devices (for example, hard drive, floppy, CD-ROM and memory), the video subsystem and the CPU of the remotely managed computer. You can also determine a potential point of failure on the target system.

	avorites Help Stop Refresh Home Search Favorites History Channels Fullscreen Mail	Links
IBM.	Hard Drive       Floppy Drive       CD-ROM       Memory       Video       CPU         Cancel       Run         Test type:       Normal length test         Logging:       All messages         Action on error:       Continue testing         Pass count:       1         Batch file:       default.pcb         Test that will be run:       Memory Test, Patterns         Memory Test, Patterns       Memory Test, Cache         Testing started at 5:40:13 PM 7/12/1999       Memory Test; Patterns - PASSED         Memory Test; Patterns - PASSED       Memory Test; Cache - PASSED         Testing completed at 5:41:01 PM 7/12/1999       All tests passed	
ē]	l internet zone	

Figure 5. A memory test for the remote system 9.24.106.25

## 1.3 Our environment

To work on the Netfinity Director product, our lab environment consisted of three Netfinity 3000 (Model 8476) servers, with Netfinity Director server and its console installed. The server managed three remote PC 300 PL (Model 6862) located on the same token-ring network and a Netfinity 5500 (Model 8660) server located on an Ethernet network, going over an 8271 bridge.

The desktops were installed with the factory preloaded operating system, but in order to cover various aspects of the agent product, one was installed in dual boot mode (Windows 95 and Novell NetWare 5.0), another with three operating systems (Windows 95, Windows NT, and OS/2 Warp V4) and the final with just its native operating system (Windows 95).

Table 3. System configurations

System	Set up information			
23-M227	Netfinity 3000 (8476-31U) IP address: 9.24.104.45			

System	Set up information				
SF5CEINX	IBM PC 300 PL (6862-R1U)				
	Operating System: Windows 95 4.00.950 B IP (DHCP): 9.24.106.29				
23-ff426	Netfinity 3000 (8476-31U)				
	Windows NT 4 Server Service Pack 4 IP address (DHCP) : 9.24.106.158				
23-8p4vl	IBM PC 300 PL (6862-R1U)				
	Windows NT 4 Workstation Service Pack 5 IP address (DHCP): 9.24.106.27				
JKL-SRV or 23-FF406	Netfinity 3000 (8476-31U)				
	Windows NT 4 Server SP 3 / SP 4 IP address (DHCP): 9.24.106.130				
NF5500	Netfinity 5500 (8660-4RU				
	Windows NT4 Server Service Pack 4 IP address (DHCP): 9.24.105.202				
CLARK / FOZZY / JABBATH	IBM PC 300 PL (6862-R1U)				
	Windows 95 4.00.950 B / OS/2 Warp V4 no fixpack / Windows NT 4 Server Service Pack 4				
	IP address (DHCP): 9.24.106.25				

## 1.4 Standards

Netfinity Director implements many industry standards. We show examples of these standards throughout this publication. A basic description as well as a pointer to places that have more information on them is shown in the following section.

## 1.4.1 Implementations

XML is used by UM Services (not Netfinity Director) in conjunction with cimv20.dtd, to format the management data that flows back and forth between the administrator's remote Web browser and the HTTP server on the UM Services system. DMI is installed (with a startup setting of *Manual*) by UM Services to provide support for the UM Desktop extensions (for example, EZ Admin) and to support the DMI browser that ships with UM Services. SNMP is used by UM Services as a tactical standard for providing inventory and alert data to management platforms that do not yet support CIM. Netfinity Director uses SNMP in event actions in order to send alert data to management platforms that do not recognize Netfinity Director events.

## 1.4.2 What is CIM and why is it important?

The Common Information Model (CIM) is a standard defined by the Distributed Management Task Force (DMTF). Version 2.2 of the standard was released in June 1999 (and is available from the Web site <a href="http://www.dmtf.org">http://www.dmtf.org</a>). CIM is a set of methodologies and syntaxes (also called a language) which describes the management features and capabilities of any device (integrated or peripherals) or software that is part of a computer. The CIM model is implemented in systems using Managed Object Format (MOF) files. That means each hardware component or piece of software that is CIM-compliant must be provided with its set of MOF files to be managed.

There are six base MOF files that have been validated and released by the DMTF. Each vendor must provide its set of MOF files to have its hardware or software manageable using CIM instrumentation. These MOF files, available from the DMTF's Web site, are listed below:

🚔 H:\sg245389\docs					_ 🗆 ×
<u>F</u> ile <u>E</u> dit <u>V</u> iew <u>H</u> elp					
a docs	-	£	*	<u></u>	<b>a</b>
Name			Size	Туре	<b></b>
CIM_Application21.mof			62KB	MOF File	
CIM_Core21.mof			58KB	MOF File	
🛛 🗐 CIM_Device21.mof			161KB	MOF File	
🔊 CIM_Physical21.mof			58KB	MOF File	
🔊 CIM_Schema21.mof			1KB	MOF File	
CIM_System21.mof			68KB	MOF File	-
1					Þ
16 object(s)	8.54MB				/_

Figure 6. The MOF files provided by the DMTF

When you install UM Services on a system, you will not see these files, because they are integrated with a set of MOF files provided with UM Services. During the installation stage of the Netfinity Director agent, one phase is dedicated to the installation of MOF files. For example, the following window appears during the installation process:



Figure 7. A MOF file provided with UM Services Plus is parsed

The MOF file above is related to the utility ConfigSafe. Thus, ConfigSafe will be manageable from a management tool. The MOF file tells the management tool what actions and administrative tasks can be done with ConfigSafe.

If you look into the cfgsafeu.mof file, you see the following:

🗉 cfgsafeu.mof - Notepad	_ 🗆 ×
<u>File Edit Search H</u> elp	
// Description (	<b></b>
<pre>// "Name of the snapshot")]</pre>	
// String Snapname;	
[read, key, MaxLen(260),	
Description (	
"Name of the most recent snapshot")]	
string RecentSnapname;	
[read,	
Description (	
"Date of the most recent snapshot")]	
Datetime Snapdate;	
[read, write, MaxLen(260), description("Name to be associated with new snapshot")]	
string NewSnapname;	
[read,write, MaxLen(260),	
Description (	
"State of snapshot, 0 idle, 1 initiate snapshot, 2 taking	
snapshot")] uint32 SnapshotState;	
aincoz snapsnocscace,	-

Figure 8. The content of a MOF file

According to the abstract, you can see that this MOF file tells the management agent that among the different actions or information available with ConfigSafe, there are some that permit it to see the names of the snapshots taken, associated with a date.

CIM is an important model for better manageability, because it allows you to perform powerful management tasks, independent of the management software used.

The CIM model is divided into two main parts:

1. CIM specifications

These are the descriptions of the CIM language, naming conventions (called the Meta Schema, a formal definition of the model), and integration with other management models, such as SNMPs, MIBs or the DMTFs MIFs (CIM specifications use a PDF file specification).

To organize the information related to an object, CIM first defines the notion of schema, which is a group of *classes* with a single owner. A class is a container for a set of instances, for example, objects having the same properties and methods. Properties can be of different types (for example, a string when the property contains a character string, or boolean if it just accepts 0 or 1 as values).

The following window helps you understand these concepts:

File Help				
CIM Classes	Instances: Win32_ShareToDirectory			
🖃 🖳 JKL-SRV 🛛 🖌	💼 Win32_ShareToDirectory.Share="\\\\23-FF406\\roof\\cinv2.Win32_Share.Name=\'ADMIN\$\\",SharedElement="\\\\23-FF406\\roof\\cinv2.Win32_Share.Name=\'ADMIN\$\\",SharedElement="\\\\23-FF406\\roof\\cinv2.Win32_Share.Name=\'ADMIN\$\\",SharedElement="\\\\23-FF406\\roof\\cinv2.Win32_Share.Name=\'ADMIN\$\\",SharedElement="\\\\23-FF406\\roof\\cinv2.Win32_Share.Name=\'ADMIN\$\\",SharedElement="\\\\23-FF406\\roof\\cinv2.Win32_Share.Name=\'			
i mottCIMV2	🔋 📋 Win32_ShareToDirectory.S	Share="\\\\23-FF406\\root\\cimv2:\	//in32_Share.Name=\"C\$\"",Shar	edElement="\\\\23-FF406\\root\\cimv2:V\
⊡NotifyStatus ⊡ PARAMETERS	🔋 💼 Win32 ShareToDirectory.9	hare="\\\\23-FF406\\root\\cimv2:\	//in32_Share.Name=\"D\$\"".Shar	edElement="\\\\23-FF406\\root\\cimv2:\\
⊡	Win32 ShareToDirectory S	hare="\\\\23-FE406\\root\\cimv2\	Avin32_Share Name=\"LANC\$\$\""	SharedElement="\\\\23-FF406\\root\\cir
⊡Oysternotass				vl\"",SharedElement="\\\\23-FF406\\root\
🗄 📋 CIM_Dependency			-	3\"",SharedElement="\\\23-FF406\\root\
🗄 📋 CIM_ElementSetting	17 7 7			
🗄 📋 CIM_ManagedSystemElement			-	C\"",SharedElement="\\\\23-FF406\\root
⊞ CIM_Product			_	L\"",SharedElement="\\\\23-FF406\\root
🖻 📋 CIM_Setting	🔋 📋 Win32_ShareToDirectory.8	hare="\\\\23-FF406\\root\\cimv2:\	//in32_Share.Name=\"LCCM\$TC	P\"",SharedElement="\\\\23-FF406\\root
Image: Mission of the second secon	🔋 📋 Win32_ShareToDirectory.9	3hare="\\\\23-FF406\\root\\cimv2:\	/Vin32_Share.Name=\"LCCM\$TM	P\"",SharedElement="\\\\23-FF406\\root
E ∰ SMS	•			► I
🕀 📋 Win32_MethodParameterClass	Properties Methods			
ie	Property Name	Flavor	Туре	Value
	GENUS	ORIGIN_SYSTEM	SINT32	2
E Min32_NTLogEventUser	CLASS	ORIGIN_SYSTEM	STRING	Win32_ShareToDirectory
🗉 📋 Win32_SecuritySettingAccess	SUPERCLASS	ORIGIN_SYSTEM	STRING	
🗄 🗒 Win32_SecuritySettingAuditing	DYNASTY	ORIGIN_SYSTEM	STRING	Win32_ShareToDirectory
🗈 📋 Win32_SecuritySettingGroup	RELPATH	ORIGIN_SYSTEM	STRING	Win32_ShareToDirectory.Share
	PROPERTY_COUNT	ORIGIN_SYSTEM	SINT32	2
Min32_ShareToDirectory ⊕ ── foot\Default	DERIVATION	ORIGIN_SYSTEM	Array - STRING	
	SERVER	ORIGIN_SYSTEM	STRING	23-FF406
E I root\Security		ORIGIN_SYSTEM	STRING	root(CIMV2
	PATH	ORIGIN_SYSTEM	STRING	1\23-FF406\root\CIMV2:/Vin32_S
	Sha SharedElement	OVERRIDABLE OVERRIDABLE	REFERENCE REFERENCE	123-FF406\root\cimv2:Win32_S. 123-FF406\root\cimv2:Win32_Di 123-FF406\root\cimv2:Win32_Di
	ShanedElement	UVERRIDABLE	REFERENCE	(123-FF 406(root(c)mv2://in32_D)
			,	
Ready				

Figure 9. The Netfinity Director CIM browser

In Figure 9 you have one schema, *root*, which has several classes: CIMV2, Default, IBMPSG, and Security. These classes appear with their fully qualified class-name (for example, root\IBMPSG). Some classes can include other classes. The class Win32\_ShareToDirectory (which is highlighted in Figure 9) has several instances. The one which is selected has a property called \_\_SERVER, which is a string type. In addition, the \_\_SERVER property contains (as a string) the NetBIOS name of the server, 23-FF406. The instance specifies this as one of a *shared directory* for the server. We can see the name of the share in another property, Share, and this sharing name is ADMIN\$ shown in Figure 10:

Properties Methods			
Property Name	Flavor	Туре	Value
GENUS	ORIGIN	SINT32	2
CLASS	ORIGIN	STRING	Win32_ShareToDirectory
SUPERCLASS	ORIGIN	STRING	
DYNASTY	ORIGIN	STRING	Win32_ShareToDirectory
RELPATH	ORIGIN	STRING	Win32_ShareToDirectory.Share="\\\\23-FF406\\root\\cimv
PROPERTY_COUNT	ORIGIN	SINT32	2
DERIVATION	ORIGIN	Array - STRING	
SERVER	ORIGIN	STRING	23-FF406
NAMESPACE	ORIGIN	STRING	root\CIMV2
PATH	ORIGIN	STRING	\\23-FF406\root\CIMV2:Win32_ShareToDirectory.Share=
Share	OVERR	REFERENCE	\\23-FF406\root\cimv2:Win32_Share.Name="ADMIN\$"
SharedElement	OVERR	REFERENCE	\\23-FF406\root\cimv2:Win32_Directory.Name="C:\\WIN

Figure 10. The \_\_SERVER property contains the string "23-FF406"

#### CIM Schema

The CIM Schema is a repository for some of the management information. Three layers are shown in the CIM Schema.

First, there is the Core Schema. It is a small set of classes, associations and properties that provide a basic vocabulary for analyzing and describing systems.

The Common Model is a set of classes related to some items concerning specific areas of the object to manage, but independent from a particular implementation. There are currently five common areas: systems, applications, networks, devices and physical.

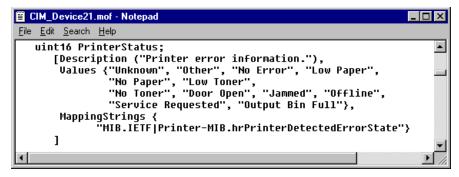


Figure 11. Description of the error conditions for a printer (from the device's MOF file)

Figure 11 is an example of the common model *devices*. It shows an abstract of the CIM-Device21.mof file, which is a file provided by the DMTF.

Lastly, we have the Extension Schemas, which are technology-specific extensions of the Common Schema. They can be of two types: Specific General, meaning this schema is related to some generic specifications, such as Unix98, or Product Specific, meaning it is related to a particular product (an application or an operating system).

We saw that CIM was implemented on a system through the use of some MOF files. Thus, the management tool can access information related to hardware or software.

To make a comparison, we could say that the CIM specifications are like a meta-language (a language which describes a language) and that the CIM

schema is the language itself, containing syntax and vocabulary related to some general and particular topics.

Management tools can understand the hardware and software that are included in a system and how to manage them.

#### 1.4.3 What is XML and why is it important?

The Extensible Markup Language, or XML, is a subset of SGML, a language used to describe documents and their content. XML means eXtensible Markup Language, and it is currently being defined by the W3C, a consortium that resides in Switzerland and which has been designing and standardizing the HTML language. More details can be found at http://www.w3.org/XML or http://www.ibm.com/xml.

XML complements HTML, because it addresses several HTML limitations that are covered in 1.4.3.1, "HTML limitations and XML addressing" on page 16. But beyond this scope, it is a platform-independent data-manipulation language, and thus complementary with Java (enables the creation of platform-independent programs) and the Internet (enables platform-independent networking). However, keep in mind that, as HTML was supposed to be, XML is a language that describes the information it contains.

#### 1.4.3.1 HTML limitations and XML addressing

Due to the lack of dynamic Web pages, it is inconvenient to display Web pages using HTML for the following reasons:

• The displaying of Web pages is not the original purpose of HTML

HTML's original purpose was to describe a document's contents and to link it to other information. There is no attention paid to how the document should be displayed in a browser. For example, the role of the <title> tag is to indicate that it is followed by the title of the document. Most of the HTML elements have been introduced by browser vendors, for presentational purposes.

· The HTML standard is not respected

In terms of the tools a Web site has been designed with, you can get a different rendering depending upon what is used. Sometimes, you may see nothing displayed on your screen due to the Web browser you use.

HTML is not efficient for the layout of Web pages

Although browser vendors introduced presentational elements, the limitations of HTML require you to try different tricks to obtain the exact desired display. For example, if you want to display text with a left indentation, you can use the tags before and after your text. Or you can use tags, or the &nbsp command to obtain what you want. In terms of the Web browser used, the display will not be the same.

XML remedies these statements and provides more flexibility:

• The author of a document has full control over the way it is displayed.

A subpart of XML, called eXtensible Style sheet Language (XSL), allows the authors of a document to have full control of fonts, colors, and positioning for the different elements they want to display on the user's screen.

• The authors can define their own markup tags inside an XML page.

This explains why XML is called a "meta-language". By using XML syntax and rules, you can create your own tags to describe the information contained in your documents.

Both style sheets and tags that you create are contained in a separate file from the XML file, called a DTD (Document Type Definition). DTD files contain the layout information (colors, fonts and disposition) used to display the different elements of the XML file, and are used by the XML browser to render the content of an XML file.

At the present time, XSL is not formally defined, meaning that there is no official browser to read and display XML information. This part of the XML specifications is being finalized by the W3C.

#### 1.4.3.2 Searching and agents

Because XML describes the information contained in files and the meaning of the elements of XML files, it allows search agents to seek information with better precision than with HTML. Figure 12 shows a sample HTML page in which some XML code has been inserted. The data displayed on the page is documented with some tags. For example, the <name> ViaVoice</name> informs you about the name of the software to which the page is related. When search agents are XML-compliant, they will be able to analyze Web pages in a smarter and more flexible way than is done today.

```
📕 speech.html - Notepad
                                                                                                      _ 🗆 🛛
<u>File Edit Search H</u>elp
<!DOCTYPE HTML PUBLIC "-//W3C//DTD HTML 3.2 Final//EN">
                                                                                                           ٠
<html>
<HEAD>
 <TITLE> IBM ViaVoice : Overview
</TITLE>
<META name="abstract" content="ViaVoice Page">
<META name="description" content="">
<META name="keywords" content="">
<META name="owner" content="">
</Pre>(META name="update" content="19990221">
</Pre>

(META name="review" content="19990821">

<META name="security" content="Public">
<SCRIPT LANGUAGE="XML">
<!--
<?xml version="1.0">
<!DOCTYPE Brand SYSTEM "http://www.ibm.com/data/xml/ProdNav.dtd">
<Brand realm="Software" cc="us" language="en">
<PrimaryCategory>Groupware - Productivity and Lotus</PrimaryCategory>
<ShortName>/software/us/groupware/viav98/</ShortName>
<Name>ViaVoice</Name>◄
       VURI name="Overview" href="http://www.software.ibm.com/speech/" this="True"/>
       <URI name="How to buy" href="http://www.software.ibm.com/speech/howtobuy/index.html"/>
       <URI name="Support" href="http://www.software.ibm.com/speech/support/index.html"/>
       <URI name="News" href="http://www.software.ibm.com/speech/news/index.html"/>
<URI name="Business partners" href="http://www.software.ibm.com/speech/partners/index.l</pre>
       <URI name="Events" href="http://www.software.ibm.com/speech/events/index.html"/>
</Brand>
//-->
</SCRIPT>
```

Figure 12. IBM is committed to XML, and therefore uses it in some Web pages

#### 1.4.3.3 Exchanging information between different systems

One of the goals of XML is the standardization of document types. Because it is platform-independent, an XML document will be readable from any platform or program that tries to read it.

Thus, it will allow a better exchange of information between enterprises, making XML a key component of an e-business strategy.

Currently, XML is not a full standard (for example, XSL is in its final phase of evaluation). What's more, it is a harder language than HTML to learn and use. On the other hand, there is broad support from the industry for XML. It has the backing of AOL/Netscape, SUN, Oracle, IBM, and Microsoft. Thus, Microsoft Internet Explorer 5.0 supports XML and an early version of XSL. This language is also used in Microsoft's Channel Definition Format (.CDF files describe how Web servers should push information to desktops).

### 1.4.4 SNMP's role

The Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) is a result of the work done by the Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF). It appeared in the 1980s, and the first Request For Comments (RFC) is dated February 1989 (RFC 1089: SNMP over Ethernet). There are several versions of SNMP (V1, V2, V2.6, V3), but the only one that has been standardized by the IETF is Version 1 (RFC 2570, which describes version 3, is categorized as informational by the authors). The versions that followed V1 are not standardized, because the authors could not agree on the security features.

SNMP is a communications protocol, by which a client program (called a network manager) connects over a TCP/IP network to a server program (called the SNMP agent). The network manager can thus request some information on the status of some devices and set some values related to the device. From a technical point of view, these messages are known as protocol data units (PDUs).

The SNMP agent can transmit information by sending traps to the network manager (for example, when a managed object does not respond) or by issuing snmpset commands. The agent has a database in which manageable objects are described, with the kind of actions that can be done on them. This database is called a Management Information Base (MIB). There is only one official MIB accepted by the IETF, but each vendor can furnish a specific MIB related to a peripheral or the software it sells or they can provide MIB extensions.

SNMP is often used to control and monitor network devices, because it has been designed as a tool to manage bandwidth on networks. This is what makes SNMP useful and explains why it is widely used. You can manage virtually any device, for example, a computer, but also routers, communications controllers, hubs, switches, bridges and printers. There are some security concerns (SNMP Version 1 PDUs are not encrypted, and there are no authentication mechanisms), but they are not covered in this book.

#### 1.4.4.1 SNMP and Netfinity Director

When you access the Netfinity Director agent on a system it can use an SNMP layer to forward alerts to some hosts. Since it does not come with any SNMP driver you have to install the one that comes with your Windows system. If you also install the UM Services code then you can do the SNMP installation

separately, or during the UM Services install process. If you choose the first way, you have to configure the SNMP agent by accessing the target system with a Web browser, and if you install it with UM Services, you have the opportunity to perform some additional configuration steps on this protocol.

**Note:** Only UM Services can send SNMP traps. The only way to get Netfinity Director to natively send SNMP traps is by configuring the Send an SNMP Trap alert action at the server. So, either you install and configure the Windows SNMP agent on the client along with UM Services, or you use the Director server's Send an SNMP Trap alert action and install the Windows SNMP agent on the server only. Both UM Services and the Netfinity Director console contain the Configure SNMP Agent tool so you can remotely configure the SNMP agent's trap destination and community.

There is no SNMP browser in Netfinity Director, but it can forward SNMP traps and messages to others hosts. This means you must configure SNMP agents on managed desktops, ThinkPads and Netfinity Director servers.

Since there are no tools in Windows 9x to configure SNMP it is up to the management agent to specify the name of the community and the addresses of the hosts to which traps should be forwarded.

Note: SNMP parameters are stored in the Windows registry at the following key:

HKEY\_LOCAL\_MACHINE\System\CurrentControlSet\Services\SNMP \Parameters

If you had the UM Services installed on your client system, then it is recommended that you use either the SNMP service under the Configuration tab in the UM Services browser interface, or the Configure SNMP Agent task from the Netfinity Director Console to modify the SNMP parameters. You should avoid directly accessing the registry because you might introduce errors into your system. If you want to know more about the registry entries see the following window:

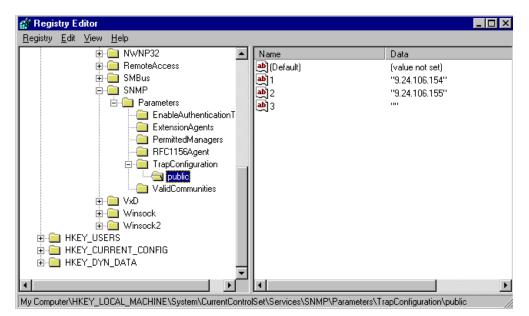


Figure 13. SNMP parameters are stored in the windows registry

### 1.4.4.2 Installing SNMP on a Windows 95 system

To install SNMP, launch the Network applet from the Windows 95 control panel:

Network ? 🗙
Configuration Identification Access Control
The following <u>n</u> etwork components are installed:
Elient for Microsoft Networks
Bial-Up Adapter
■ IBM 16/4 Token-Ring PCI Adapter 2 TCP/IP -> Dial-Up Adapter
TCP/IP -> IBM 16/4 Token-Ring PCI Adapter 2
Sile and printer sharing for Microsoft Networks
Add <u>R</u> emove <u>Properties</u>
Primary Network Logon:
Client for Microsoft Networks
Eile and Print Sharing
Description
OK Cancel

Figure 14. The Network applet

.

Click Add and on the following window and click Service.

Select Network Component Type	? ×
Click the type of network component you want to install:	
🔜 Client	<u>A</u> dd
B Adapter	
🖗 Protocol	Cancel
畏 Service	
A service enables this computer to share files, printers, and other resources with other computers.	

Figure 15. SNMP is implemented as a Win32-based agent service in Windows 95

On the following window click Have Disk.

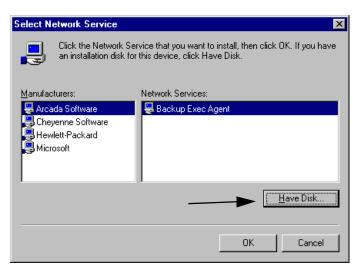


Figure 16. The SNMP agent is not listed by default

You then have to specify the full path to the code. It resides in the \Admin\Nettools\Snmp directory on the Windows 95 CD-ROM.



Figure 17. The path to the code

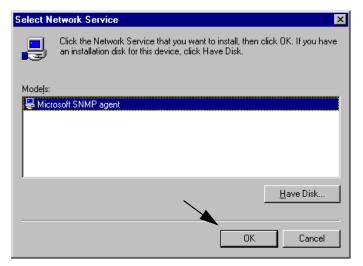


Figure 18. SNMP service

Once you obtain the above dialog box, click **OK**. This brings you back to the Network control panel.

Network ? 🗙
Configuration Identification Access Control
The following network components are installed:
The following retwork components are installed.      Pip Dial-Up Adapter
BM 16/4 Token-Ring PCI Adapter 2
G TCP/IP -> Dial-Up Adapter
TCP/IP -> IBM 16/4 Token-Ring PCI Adapter 2
File and printer sharing for Microsoft Networks
Add <u>B</u> emove <u>Properties</u>
Primary Network Logon:
Client for Microsoft Networks
Eile and Print Sharing
Description
OK Cancel

Figure 19. The SNMP agent is added to the network component list

The installation begins when you click the bottom **OK** button.

If you are asked to overwrite some existing files that are newer than the ones being copied, click **No**.

During the installation, it is possible that Windows 95 might ask you for the path to the Windows 95 files (usually, in d:\win95, where d: can be replaced by the drive letter of your CD-ROM drive).

Once the file copy is finished, click **Yes** to restart your computer.

Later, if you install UM Services on the computer, do not forget to check the box **SNMP access and trap forwarding** to enable the feature.

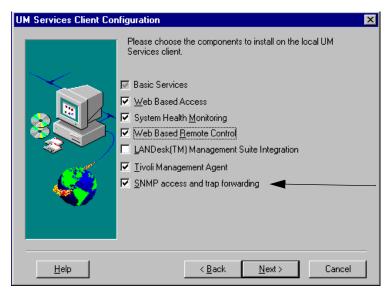


Figure 20. Continue installing UM Services

An additional step needs to be completed for SNMP configuration. You must indicate the name of the community to which the target systems belong and the IP addresses (a maximum of three) of the systems to whom the SNMP's traps are to be forwarded.

To do this, you must launch a supported Web browser to reach the target system. For the URL enter http://ip\_address\_of\_the\_target:411, if you configured the client agent to listen on port 411 (411 is the default port). After logging in, select the **Tasks** tab and select the **SNMP** function in the left pane (you may have to collapse the tasks tree to select the SNMP function).

A page similar to the following window then appears:

💥 9.24.106.25 - Netscape			
<u>File Edit View Go</u> Communication	or <u>H</u> elp		
Back Forward Reload	🔬 🙇 🚵 Home Search Netsca	pe Print Security	Stop
🧵 🏾 🎻 🖁 Bookmarks 🛛 🔬 Location:	http://9.24.106.25:411/index3.	html	
iem. 👼	Next System		
Information Tasks 9.24.106.25 Configuration Asset ID Date & Time User Security CoSession Remo CoSession Remo CoSession Remo ConfigSafe DMI Information EZ Admin Remote Control Shutdown CoState System Updates			Inity Name Add Remove Trap Destination Add Edit Remove Apply
I D			

Figure 21. The SNMP configuration

Click the **Add** button and a dialog box appears where you can enter the community name.



Figure 22. Dialog box to enter the community name for the system

Click the **Add** button located under the Trap Destination window to obtain the following dialog box asking you for the IP or IPX destination address of the host to which you should send the traps:



Figure 23. Dialog box to enter a destination address for trap forwarding

Click **OK** to validate. Once you have entered all the addresses of the SNMP hosts, click **Apply** on the bottom to record the changes. You should see a configuration window like the following:

Herein Stress         Herein Stress	tor <u>H</u> elp	
Back Forward Reload	Home Search Netscape Print Security Stop	N
🚪 📲 Bookmarks 🏼 🎄 Location	n: http://9.24.106.25:411/index3.html	💌 🌍 🕻 What's Related
iem. 🚊	Next System	9
Information Tasks 9.24.106.25 Configuration Alert On LAN Asset ID Date & Time Network SNIF Tools Tools DMI Information Remote Control Shutdown Web Links Web Links System Updates	Community Name public Add Remove Trap Destination 9.24.106.154 9.24.106.155 Add Edit Remove Apply	
💣 🕪 🛛 Transi	ferring data from 9.24.106.25:411	= 🔆 🍇 🔊 🖬 🏑 //

Figure 24. The SNMP configuration has been remotely applied

Once you click **Apply**, the SNMP agent stops and it is restarted on the remote computer. There is no need to reboot it for the changes to take effect.

**1.4.4.3 Installing SNMP during UM Services installation on Windows 9x** For a Windows 9x-based system, the UM Services installation program will open the Network control panel. The procedure is the same one that was used to install SNMP separately from UM Services, except the installation program configures the SNMP agent. Note: If you uninstall IBM UM Services, you have to manually remove SNMP.

You have to check the box **SNMP acccess and trap forwarding** during the installation of UM Services.

UM Services Client Co	nfiguration 🛛 🔀
	Please choose the components to install on the local UM Services client.  Basic Services  Web Based Access System Health Monitoring Web Based Remote Control LANDesk(TM) Management Suite Integration I ivoli Management Agent SiNMP access and trap forwarding
Help	< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Cancel

Figure 25. Enabling of SNMP support

The installation program detects if SNMP is installed or not. If not, it asks you to proceed with the installation:

Install SI	NMP on this computer 🛛 🕅
?	Do you want to install SNMP (Simple Network Management Protocol) on this computer? Installing SNMP will allow this computer to forward alerts via SNMP to systems management applications such as Microsoft SMS.
	You will need your Windows NT CD-ROM to install SNMP.
	Click "Yes" to pop up the Network control panel and instructions that will guide you through installing SNMP or click "No" to skip the SNMP installation.
	<u>Yes</u> <u>N</u> o

Figure 26. UM Services program has detected that no SNMP agent was installed

Click **Yes** to launch the network control panel. Do not click **No** since Windows will ask you to restart the computer and that ends the UM Services installation.

You have to indicate the community name and the IP address of one or more systems to which the traps should be sent.

Configuring SNMP Trap	Destination	s 🛛
	Use the def with the terr name of the	iault "public" Community name if you are not familiar m. The Trap Destination should be the IP address or machine that will receive SNMP traps. This machine r Microsoft SMS Server. public 9.24.106.154
	Trap Dest	
		< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Cancel

Figure 27. SNMP configuration during UM Services installation

When the installation program finishes, click **Yes** to restart the computer. UM Services activates when you start up Windows and SNMP.

## 1.4.4.4 Installing SNMP on a Windows NT system

In the control panel for Windows NT 4.0, launch the network applet:



Figure 28. Icon for the Network applet

The following window appears:

Network	x
Identification Services Protocols Adapters Bindings	_
Network Services:	
Computer Browser  NetBIDS Interface  RPC Configuration  Server  Vorkstation	
Add <u>R</u> emove <u>Properties</u> <u>Update</u> Description:       Distributed protocol required for running the Computer Browser service.	
OK Cancel	

Figure 29. Perform Network configuration in Windows NT 4.0

Click the **Services** tab, and choose **Add**. In the list of the services shipped with Windows NT 4.0, you should see the SNMP service.

Select Network Service	? ×
Click the Network Service that you want to install, then you have an installation disk for this component, click H	
Network Service:	
Services for Macintosh Simple TCP/IP Services SNMP Service Windows Internet Name Service Workstation Ha	▲ ▼ Ive Disk
ОК	Cancel

Figure 30. Add the SNMP service

Click **OK**. Windows then asks you for the location of the source files.

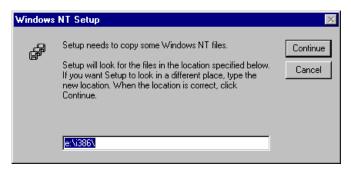


Figure 31. The CD-ROM drive is e:

After a short file copy, Windows NT asks you for some configuration information related to the SNMP service.

Microsoft SNMP Properties	×
Agent Traps Security	
This information is returned by the SNMP service for the Internet MIB's system group. Optional Contact and Location fields should be provided for this computer. Service information should reflect the network services provided by this computer.	
Contact: Administrator	
Location: Building 425	
<u>Service</u>	
Physical P Applications Datalink / Subnetwork	
✓ Internet	
OK Cancel Apply	

Figure 32. The Agent tab of the Microsoft SNMP properties

In the Agent tab, fill in the name of the contact (the person who is in charge of the computer) and the location of the system. These fields are optional. Check the boxes related to the network services present on the computer.

In the Traps tab, enter the name of a community, and click the **Add** button. You can then select the **Add** button under the Trap destinations tab, to enter the destination address to which the traps are to be forwarded. You can have several communities on your network, each one with a dedicated address. We used TCP/IP here, but IPX addresses can also be used.

Microsoft SNMP Properties	? ×
Agent Traps Security	
The SNMP Service provides network management over TCP/IP and IPX/SPX protocols. If traps are required, one or more community names must be specified. Trap destinations may be ho names, IP addresses, or IPX addresses.	ost
Community Name:	-
public Add	
admin <u>R</u> emove	
Trap Destinations:	
9.24.106.154	
Add Edit Remove	
OK Cancel Appl	y

Figure 33. The Traps tab of the SNMP properties

The third tab is related to security considerations. You can specify some permissions for each community you declared. It is a good security practice to specify from whom your system can accept SNMP packets, thus protecting the computer from malicious intentions.

Microsoft SNMP Properties	? ×
Agent Traps Security	
Send Authentication Trap Accepted Community Names	
Community	Rights
public	READ CREATE
A <u>d</u> d <u>E</u> o	dit <u>R</u> emove
Accept SNMP Packets fro     Accept SNMP Packets fro	
9.24.106.154	
Ed	dįt Re <u>m</u> ove
ОК	Cancel <u>Apply</u>

Figure 34. Network management security management

When you have finished the SNMP configuration, click the **OK** button on the bottom, which brings you back to the Services tab in the Network applet. You should see SNMP Service now displayed in the list of the installed services.

Network ? 🗙
Identification Services Protocols Adapters Bindings
Network Services:
Computer Browser Computer Browser RetBIOS Interface RetConfiguration Server
Server SNMP Service Workstation
Add <u>R</u> emove <u>Properties</u> Update
Description: Distributed protocol required for running the Computer Browser service.
Close Cancel

Figure 35. The SNMP service is installed

Click the Close button. Windows will ask you to restart the computer. Click Yes.

When you install UM Services on the system, the box **SNMP access and trap forwarding** must be checked.

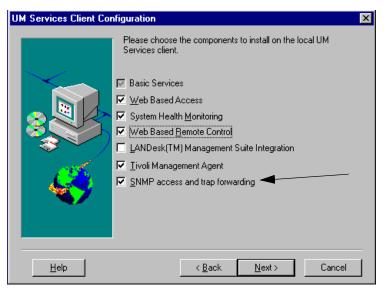


Figure 36. This allows SNMP support with UM Services

**1.4.4.5 Installing SNMP during UM Services install on Windows NT** As specified in Figure 36, once you have launched the installation program for UM Services on a Windows NT 4.0 system, the SNMP box must be checked.

Then, during the install process, the program will detect if SNMP is already installed. If this is not the case, it will ask you to proceed with the installation of the SNMP service, by displaying the following dialog box:



Figure 37. UM service installation program detected that SNMP was not installed

Clicking **No** will cancel the SNMP installation process, and you will go on with UM Services installation. If you click **Yes**, the program will bring up the Network control panel and some instructions to proceed. These are the same as if you installed SNMP separately from UM Services, except you have to click **No** when Windows NT asks you to restart the computer. Once done, close the UM Services instructions for installing SNMP by clicking **Next**. Then, you will be able to continue with the UM Services installation.

**Note:** Whichever way you choose to install the SNMP Agent, an additional step is necessary to have a fully enabled SNMP agent in Windows NT (and therefore Netfinity Director or UM Services).

SNMP is installed in Windows NT in two parts: an SNMP service and an SNMP Trap Service. The trap service does not start automatically at startup. If you want that to occur you can change it using the Services icon in the control panel.

)er <u>v</u> ice	Status	Startup		Close
Plug and Play	Started	Automatic		
Protected Storage	Started	Automatic		Start
Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Locator		Manual		
Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Service	Started	Automatic		Stop
Remoteboot Service		Manual		
Schedule		Manual		Pause
Server	Started	Automatic		Continue
SNMP	Started	Automatic		Politikae
SNMP Trap Service		Manual		Charburg
Spooler	Started	Automatic	•	Sta <u>r</u> tup
				HW Profiles
Startup Parameters:				

Figure 38. The Services applet from Windows NT control panel

Select SNMP Trap Service -> Startup. The following window will appear:

Service	×
Service: SNMP Trap Service	
Startup Type <u>Automatic</u> <u>M</u> anual Disabled	OK Cancel
Log On As:     System Account     Allow Service to Interact with De	<u>H</u> elp
C Ihis Account:	
Password:	

Figure 39. Control the startup of services

Check **Automatic** to have the SNMP Trap service automatically started at each boot of the operating system. Then click **OK**.

You can then click Start to launch it immediately. Then click Close.

**Note:** You can use the SNMP Trap service only to listen for traps, not send them. Therefore, unless you have a Trap listener installed, there is no need to enable the SNMP Trap service.

#### 1.4.5 How is DMI used?

Desktop Management Interface (DMI) is a standard that is the result of the work of the Distributed Management Task Force. The current version is 2.0 and that became available in June 1998. It introduces security features, such as authentication functions, logging and security indicators.

DMI can be thought of as the predecessor to CIM even though it works in different ways. It is considered to be dedicated to a computer's management and does not allow any management on networks devices (such as bridges, routers and printers) as SNMP does. Even though DMI has been standardized it has not been as widely adopted by the industry as CIM has.

DMI is code that is implemented in your system's BIOS and in the operating system. It acts as a layer of abstraction between the management software and the system's components. It is accessible locally (through operating system's functions) or remotely through remote procedures calls (RPC).

Thus, the software implemented in the operating system is called a service provider. It gets some requests through RPC calls. To satisfy them it gathers component information by using the RPCs in conjunction with application programming interfaces (APIs) provided within the DMI specifications, which are functions called by applications, and component descriptions stored in databases called Management Information Files (MIF). Each component that is part of a system has a MIF file to describe its manageable characteristics, and after being installed in a system, it is added to the MIF database. Installed means the MIF file is presented to the DMI service provider for inclusion in the MIF database.

## 1.4.6 WFM 2.0

The Wired For Management specifications, published by Intel (located at <a href="http://www.intel.com">http://www.intel.com</a>), are the result of the industry initiatives to define a common platform to make computers easily manageable and thus reduce the Total Cost of Ownership (TCO).

TCO can be defined in several ways. Some definitions focus only on acquisition costs (buying hardware, software and using administrative tools), while others take into account the lost of productivity when, for example, a user calls the helpdesk in order to get information on how to use some software. Usually, the first method has a cost of \$2000-\$3000 per computer, and the second of around \$8000.

The best manageability is the one that reduces the TCO. In order to reach this goal, computer industry vendors define standards to help make the management of their platforms easier. But while CIM, DMI and SNMP cover some of the needs, the Wired for Management specifications list all the required technologies, and dictate several recommendations.

WFM covers BIOS, hardware, software, and instrumentation requirements, and can be considered as a reference source for developers of management applications. Three types of computers are considered by these specifications: desktops, mobiles, and servers.

Such a distinction is made for each platform's characteristics. For example, a mobile user must pay special attention to power management, whereas systems administrators focus on the down-time related to servers. WFM 2.0 is not itself a technology, but a set of requirements or recommendations regarding the technologies to use on computer platforms.

#### 1.4.6.1 Power Management: ACPI

The Advanced Configuration and Power Interface (ACPI) is a power management specification developed by Intel, Microsoft and Toshiba. It is an interface between the operating system, the hardware and the BIOS that implements suspend, resume, and restart functions. A feature of ACPI is the OnNow function, which allows a computer to be awakened by an external device, such as a keyboard or a mouse.

A system can have four distinct power states: working, sleeping, soft off, and mechanical off.

#### 1.4.6.2 BIOS implementation: SMBIOS

The System Management BIOS (SMBIOS) is a specification which, when implemented in a computer's BIOS, allows one to export some management data in a standard table format. Instrumentation software can then retrieve the information and use it for management purposes. SMBIOS V2.2 is required for any system that wants to be WFM 2.0-compliant.

A BIOS with management abilities is a critical requirement since it is the only code that can detect some configuration or system settings, in particular during the boot stage.

SMBIOS must be able to export some data related to the manufacturer of the computer, the characteristics of the present processors, information related to physical slots, memory type, system enclosure and its characteristics.

The current SMBIOS specification is Version 2.3, dated August 1998, and lists all the data a SMBIOS must and may export.

Figure 40 shows the signature of a SMBIOS-compliant BIOS:

👪 MS-DOS Pron	npt - DEBUG	
	📖 🖻 💽 💽 🖪	
DOSKey installed	1	
C:\>debug T9000:DFC0 5F 55 F0000:DFC0 5F 45 F0000:DFC0 5F 44 F0000:DFC0 52 55 F0000:DFC0 52 55 F0000:E000 FF FF F0000:E000 60 00 F0000:E030 00 00 F0000:E030 00 00 -	40 5F 64 1F 82 01-18 01 00 00 00 00 00 00 44 44 29 56 55 20 20 20 20 20 00 44 44 20 56 55 20 20 20 20 00 56 56 50 20 20 20 20 00 56 50 20 20 20 20 00 56 50 20 20 20 20 20 00 56 50 20 20 20 20 20 20 20 00 56 50 20 20 20 20 20 20 20 20 20 20 20 20 20	_SM_d; PDUT RSD PTA ZIBM M 1981, 1984 1984

Figure 40. Header of a SMBIOS

The \_SM\_ string indicates that the BIOS of this computer (a PC 300 PL) is compliant with SMBIOS specifications. At byte 06h and 07h, we have indications on the major and the minor revision of the SMBIOS specifications implemented in this system (the values 02h and 01h indicate that it is SMBIOS 2.1 compliant).

#### 1.4.6.3 Preboot execution environment and boot integrity services

PXE is required for platforms that have a LAN adapter. PXE includes a protocol and interfaces that enable a system to download from a server a bootable environment that is related to the state of the computer. That means that the server decides which bootable code it must send to the target system, but its choice can be influenced by the information that the client provides.

Let's consider what happens if you have an IBM PC 300 PL client system on the network on which you want to restore an operating system, using LAN Client Control Manager.

- 1. From the LCCM console, you assign an icon representing the client, some batch files that contain instructions to partition, format, and install an operating system.
- Click the **Process** button from the LCCM console and LCCM sends a Wake-On-LAN command to the client.
- 3. The Ethernet network adapter embedded in the client gets the wake-up command and powers up the system.
- 4. According to the alternative boot sequence, the computer will boot to the network, meaning that, using the PXE environment code, it sends a DHCP request (broadcast) on the LAN.
- 5. A server responds to the requests and forward to the client some IP configuration values, and possibly (depending on the network implementation)

the location and file name of a bootable image. The type of bootable image sent usually depends of the type of network adapter installed on the client.

- The client uses TFTP (Trivial File Transfer Protocol) to download this bootable image. LCCM provides a set of bootable images, which usually consists of a bootable IBM PC DOS 7.0 floppy image, with a network stack (a network driver, and protocol stacks, as TCP/IP and NetBIOS functions).
- 7. Once the image is downloaded into the client's memory, the bootstrap loader locates its position and boots that image.
- 8. When the boot process on the image is complete, the client can download from the LCCM server the batch files necessary to complete an operating system installation. Often, these are scripts that support unattended mode. That is so that it can automatically perform some operations such as partitioning the hardfile, formatting it, and then installing the operating system itself.

The Boot Integrity Services is a set of code located on the target system, which calculates a digital signature with the downloaded image and compare it to the one sent by the server to allow for the detection of corrupted data. These services have the status *recommended*, so they are not used by all WFM 2.0 compliant systems.

#### 1.4.6.4 Instrumentation (DMI, CIM, SNMP)

Instrumentation is a common methodology and syntax for defining the management features and capabilities of all hardware, software and attached devices for a platform. The characteristics of the different instrumentations available on PC platforms are discussed in 1.4.2, "What is CIM and why is it important?" on page 12, 1.4.4, "SNMP's role" on page 18, and 1.4.5, "How is DMI used?" on page 33. WFM 2.0 guidelines encourage the use of the WBEM/CIM model, which requires that one of three management frameworks (DMI 2.0, SNMP, WBEM/CIM) be installed and active on a system, and that the instrumentation supports removable devices (such as PC Cards and Hot Swap drives).

#### 1.4.6.5 Network PC guidelines

These guidelines are a set of recommendations resulting from an initiative of the computer industry. They are dated from August 1997 and available on the Intel Web site.

These guidelines are part of the WFM 2.0 specifications, and explain why and how to implement certain features that help to reduce the TCO for Windows platforms, and to ease the manageability of the platforms.

These features include, but are not limited to: instrumentation, network boot capabilities, controlled and managed upgrade capabilities, and a sealed case that prevents end-user access for changing the system hardware or software configuration.

# Chapter 2. Installation and customization

This chapter shows the environment that is needed to support Netfinity Director as well as how to install it on servers and clients. Netfinity Director consists of four separate installation modules:

Select Components			×
	Please select th	e components that you want to install.	
		Server Includes Server, Console, and Client	
		Console Remote user interface for Netfinity Director Servers.	
		Client Install on machines to be managed	
		Workgroup/Enterprise Integration Installs UM Services integration for management environments.	
		< Black. Next > Cancel	

Figure 41. Installation options

1. Netfinity Director Server

The Netfinity Director Server includes the data files, Java class libraries and security control point needed to manage the Netfinity Director environment. It also includes a database for storing inventory. For further information see 2.2.1, "Prerequisites for Netfinity Director Server" on page 38.

2. Netfinity Director Console

The Netfinity Director Console is the graphical user interface to the Netfinity Director Server. It can be installed on the same system as the server or on a separate system connected via TCP/IP to the server. It can be customized for different administrators and you can install an unlimited number of consoles to support your environment. For further information see 2.2.4.1, "Prerequisites for Netfinity Director Console" on page 51.

3. Netfinity Director Client

The Netfinity Director Client, which includes UM Services, runs on the client endpoints. The Netfinity Director Server installation process installs the client when it installs the server. The Netfinity Director Client can use a variety of protocols to report to the server as indicated in 2.2.6.1, "Prerequisites for Netfinity Director Client" on page 55, and it runs on many different operating systems.

4. Workgroup/Enterprise Integration

This installs the upward integration modules to interface with Tivoli NetView, SMS, Unicenter TNG and Alert on LAN. For more details on upward integration modules see *Universal Manageability: Enterprise Management Integration*, SG24-5388.

# 2.1 Our environment

To work on the Netfinity Director product, our lab environment consisted of three Netfinity 3000 (Model 8476) servers, with Netfinity Director Server and its console installed. These servers managed three remote PC 300 PL systems (Model 6862) located on the same token-ring network, and a Netfinity 5500 (Model 8660) server located on an Ethernet network. The operating system that we used was Windows NT Version 4.0 with Service Pack 4.

The desktops were installed with the factory-preloaded Windows 95, but in order to cover different product functions in this chapter we added additional operating systems to some of the systems. The preloaded Windows 95 system was used to install the Netfinity Director Client and the Desktop Extensions. More information about this installation can be found in 2.2.6, "Install Netfinity Director Client" on page 55. Novell NetWare 5.0 was used on the desktop to install the Netfinity Director Client about this installation is in 2.4, "NetWare V5.0 agents" on page 62. Some comparisons between Netfinity Manager and Netfinity Director were done using Windows NT Workstation Version 4.0 Service Pack 5. More information about that can be found in 6.1, "Running Netfinity Director and Netfinity Manager together" on page 235.

# 2.2 Installation of the Netfinity Director Server

Netfinity Director's operation is built around the concept of management systems. A management system is a system or device that can be recognized by the Netfinity Director server.

## 2.2.1 Prerequisites for Netfinity Director Server

The Netfinity Director requires the following hardware and software:

- Pentium Processor 166 MHz or faster
- 64 MB RAM
- 85 MB of free disk space
- Windows NT 4.0 Workstation or Windows NT 4.0 Server
- Service Pack 4 or higher
- TCP/IP networking protocol

**Note:** This is a mandatory protocol that makes it possible to communicate with the Netfinity Director Console whether the console is local or remote. In addition, TCP/IP can be used to communicate with the clients.

- IPX, NetBIOS, SNA and SLIP are also supported for communication with the clients
- · A network adapter that supports the protocols listed above

## 2.2.2 Installation procedure for Netfinity Director Server

Before you begin the installation make sure that you are logged on as an administrator or an ID with equivalent privileges. The Netfinity Director installation can be started either by inserting the CD into the CD-ROM drive or by executing ibmsetup.exe (X:\win32\install\ibmsetup.exe).

This starts a wizard that guides you through the installation process as follows:

IBM Net	finity Director Setup
Welcome	X
	Welcome to the IBM Netfinity Director Setup program. This program will install IBM Netfinity Director on your computer.
	It is strongly recommended that you exit all Windows programs before running this Setup program.
	Click Cancel to quit Setup and then close any programs you have running. Click Next to continue with the Setup program.
<u>s</u>	WARNING: This program is protected by copyright law and international treaties.
	Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this program, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under law.
	Next> Cancel

Figure 42. Setup program

After clicking **Next**, you have to agree to the license agreement. If you agree with the terms click **Yes**. Then you have the choice of which components to install.

Select Components		×	
	Please select th	e components that you want to install.	
		Server Includes Server, Console, and Client	
		Console Remote user interface for Netfinity Director Servers.	
		Client Install on machines to be managed	
	1	Workgroup/Enterprise Integration Installs UM Services integration for management environments.	
		< <u>B</u> ack. <u>N</u> ext > <b>Cancel</b>	

Figure 43. Installation on Windows NT

If you are performing the installation on Windows NT you can choose to:

• Install Netfinity Director Server

With this selection the Director Server and the Netfinity Director Console will be installed on the same machine during the installation process.

• Install Netfinity Director Console

During this installation program you can install the Netfinity Director Console on a separate system anywhere in your network. In that case you can control the Netfinity Director Server from another location.

Install Netfinity Director Client

This is used for the installation of the client that will report to the Netfinity Director.

• Workgroup/Enterprise Integrator

This is used to install upward integration modules.

**Note:** The readme file gives you a lot of hints and tips for the Intel LANDesk environment and the SQL server database (it is approximately 22 pages).

The installation on a Windows 9x system only has a choice of:

- Netfinity Director Console
- Netfinity Director Client
- View Readme

Click the button Server to start your installation.

**Note:** If you have a beta level of Netfinity Director installed you must completely uninstall the beta code before you install this product.

Click Next to proceed. The next window is for the license agreement.

Since the installation of the server also installs the UM Services code, the next window (shown in Figure 44) shows the configuration options for UM Services:

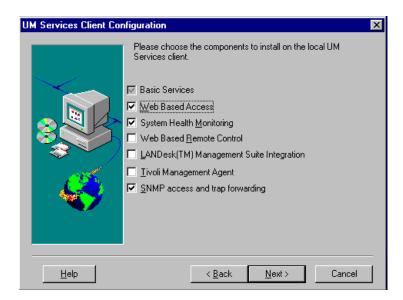


Figure 44. UM Services

We added Web Based Remote Control and Tivoli Management Agent to the default options that were presented:

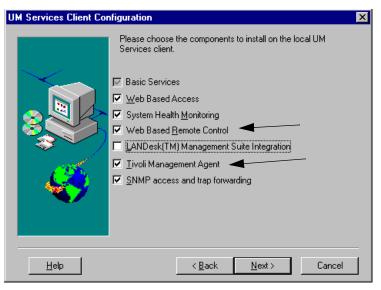


Figure 45. Added options

You then need to provide a user ID that has administrator rights:

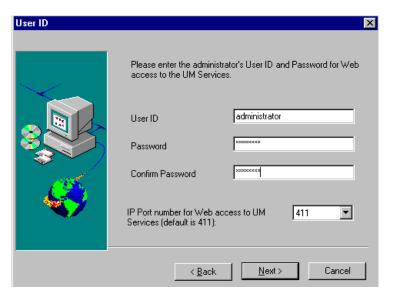


Figure 46. Administrator user ID

You can add UM Services to your start menu. Following that, the code prepares to install:

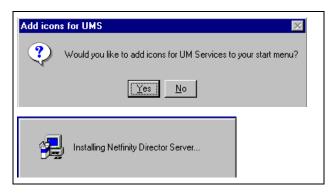


Figure 47. Start menu

In order to install the code you need a valid Netfinity Director license key:

Server License Key	×
	Please enter the Full Function Server key.
	< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Cancel

Figure 48. License key

Note: The license key is not case-sensitive.

Choose Destination Loca	ation	Х
	Setup will install into the following directory. To use this directory, click Next. To select a different directory, click Browse and select another directory. You can choose not to install by clicking Cancel to exit Setup.	
	Destination Directory         C:\Program Files\IBM\Director\         Browse         < Browse	

Figure 49. Destination Directory of Netfinity Director

This wizard will ask for the installation path where the Netfinity Director should be installed. To change the default path (other disks or directories) click **Browse** or just click **Next** if you accept the default path.

After selecting the disk and directories you will be asked to commit the path for the installation program. Click **Yes** to continue with the installation.

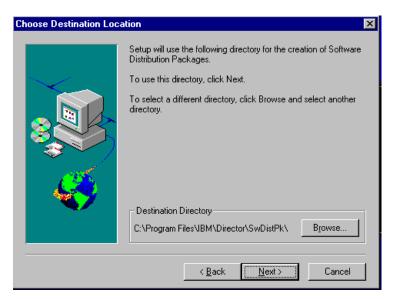


Figure 50. Confirmation of selected destination directory for installing Netfinity Director

Select or accept the path to install the directory for creating the software distribution package. Click **Next** if you accept the path.

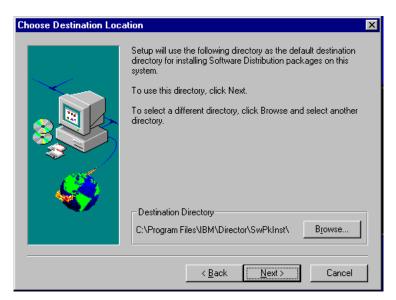


Figure 51. Software package destination directory

During this step you can select the destination where you will install the software package. Click **Next** if you accept the path.

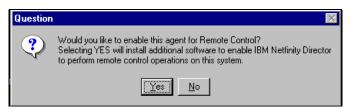


Figure 52. Remote control installation option

When using this wizard you need to determine if you want to enable the remote control function or not. Remember that when you install the server code you also get the console and the agent installed at the same time. We selected to enable this function so that we could manage this server from another server. Click **Yes** if you want to enable Remote Control.

After that, the next prompt is for the Tivoli Management Agent support.

Question	×
?	Would you like to enable the TMR Gateway for this Server?

Figure 53. TMA support installation option

After clicking the **Yes** button, the installation process starts and shows the following:



Figure 54. Initialization to clear system for installation of Netfinity Director

This procedure looks at the system to see if there is an older version of the product already installed. If there is, it removes it. Netfinity Director starts to install the files and the following directories are added to the disk:

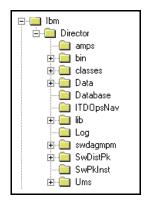


Figure 55. Directories added after installation of Netfinity Director Server

During our installation, Netfinity Director used 72 MB.

NT Account Information		X
	Domain/UserName currently in use:	-
$\sim$	Domain: BARRYPS2	
	UserName: barry	
	Please enter the Password for the NT account:	-
	Password:	
	Confirm password:	
	< <u>B</u> ack. <u>N</u> ext > Cancel	

Figure 56. User ID and password

The installation will prompt you for a valid user ID and password. When you log on to the Netfinity Director server through the management console the user ID and password are validated against the Windows NT security subsystem where the Netfinity Director is installed.

Enter a valid domain and user name for the Windows NT account. Enter a password and click **Next** to proceed.

Director Database Confi	guration	×
	IBM Netfinity Dir Select one of th	ector requires a database. e following:
		Default Create default database. Recommended for most computers.
		Advanced Create MS SQL Server database (Microsoft SQL Server must be installed and configured in your network).
		Advanced Create DB2 database (DB2 must be installed and configured in your network).
		Custom Select an existing IBM Netfinity Director database.
	[	< Back. Next> Cancel

Figure 57. Database selection

In this step you install the database support. You have to choose which database to use on the server (MS SQL or IBM DB2) or the default Microsoft Jet database that can be installed during this procedure.

If you do not have a separate database you have to select **Default**; otherwise, you will have to repeat the complete installation. For more information about databases see Chapter 5, "Database support" on page 197.

Network Driver Configu	ration	×	ć
System Name: 23-FF	426		
Network Drivers:			
NetBIOS <enabled></enabled>	Driver <u>E</u> nabled		
TCP/IP <enabled> SNA/APPC <enabled></enabled></enabled>			
Network Time-Out (sec):		15	
	ation for Screen Access		
Enable Wake-Un-LAN	I (if supported by Network Car	ſĊĮ	
OK	Cancel	<u>H</u> elp	

Figure 58. Driver selection for different protocols

Netfinity Director allows you to use any available network interface that is listed in the window.

To configure the network driver:

- Enter the name for your system in the System Name field.
- Select your network driver by clicking the protocol and the **Driver Enabled** box.

**Note**: If your system is not a part of a network, no network driver will be displayed.

#### • Check the Require User Authorization for Screen Access box.

This feature is a security feature. When this option is not enabled, Netfinity Director Console users can take control of your system without the permission of the local user.

With this option enabled users cannot get unauthorized access to your system. They need your confirmation that you will allow them to get access to your system. The confirmation is done through a pop-up window. This pop-up window has a GUI that lets you confirm or reject access.

If you click **No** the specified user cannot get access to your system. If you click **Yes** the specified user can take full control of the server's keyboard and mouse.

**Note:** If you do not respond to the pop-up window within 15 seconds, Netfinity Director will not grant access to your system.

For further information on configuring and using Remote Control service, see 1.1, "Netfinity Director base functions" on page 1.

• Enable Wake-on-LAN

This option lets Netfinity Director manage your system independent of its power-on status. You should enable this feature only if this function is supported by your network card. It is not only a software feature, your LAN card must support Wake-on-LAN.

· Set Network Time-Out value - (this is optional)

The Network Time-Out field shows the number of seconds that the Netfinity Director Server will attempt to communicate with a remote system before it gives up. The default setting is 15 seconds.

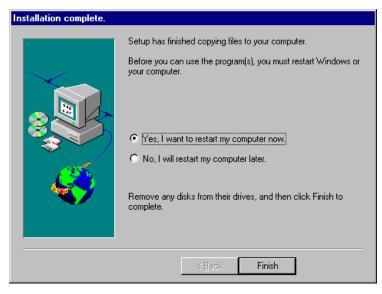


Figure 59. Reboot the server after installing Netfinity Director

Click Finish so that the system will reboot.

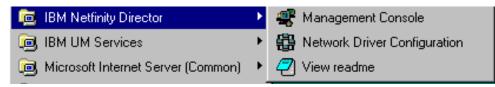


Figure 60. Start the Management Console

After the system reboots, the following items are added to the start menu:

• View readme

Click this and it will open a text file with important hints and tips. If you use Windows 9x or Windows NT this file will be opened with Notepad.

• Uninstall Netfinity Director

If you click this folder you will start the deinstallation procedure for the Netfinity Director Server code.

• Network Driver Configuration

To make additional changes to the configuration you can select **Network Driver Configuration** and you get the same driver installation window that you saw during the installation process.

You can make additional changes if required. For example, you can disable or enable your protocols, change a user's authorization for screen access or enable or disable the Wake-on-LAN function.

• Management Console

The Netfinity Director Console is startable from the start menu.

When the Server starts, a logon window will appear prompting you for a server name, user ID and password. The server name is the TCP/IP hostname or address of the Netfinity Director Server.

IBM Netfinity Director Login	[	×
Netfinity D	IBM irector	
Netfinity Director Server	barryps2.ibmus2.ibm.com	
User ID	barry	
Password	* * * * * * * *	
	OK Cancel Help	

Figure 61. Netfinity Director logon

Enter the user ID and password to log on to the Netfinity Director Server. If the user ID and password are valid the Netfinity Director server will start.

**Note:** You should also notice an icon on the task bar in the lower right-hand corner of the window. If Netfinity Director is up and running it looks like a green ball. If it is not correctly running it looks lik ea red triangle.

After the installation has completed the Netfinity Director has two additional NT groups created. Figure 62 shows both groups, TWGAdmin and TWGSuperAdmins. Both of them have the administrator ID.

📲 User Manager - \\BARRYP	\$2	
<u>U</u> ser <u>V</u> iew <u>P</u> olicies <u>O</u> ptions <u>I</u>	<u>H</u> elp	
Username	Full Name	Description
Administrator barry Guest IUSR_BARRYPS2 trmersrvd	Internet Guest Account tmersrvd	Built-in account for administering the comp Built-in account for guest access to the con Internet Server Anonymous Access Tivoli Unprivileged Operations Account (re
Groups	Description	
Administrators Administrators Admetackup Operators Admetackup Operators Admetackup Operators Admin_Privileges Admin_Privileges	Members can fully admini Members can bypass file Users granted guest acco Members can share direc Supports file replication ir	ess to the computer/domain ctories and printers a domain

Figure 62. Netfinity Director Server NT group

## 2.2.3 Uninstall Netfinity Director

To uninstall Netfinity Director Server code click Start -> Settings -> Control -> Add/Remove Programs. Select IBM Netfinity Director and click Add/Remove.

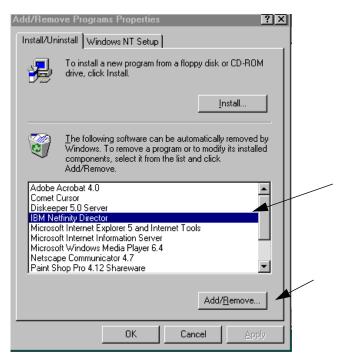


Figure 63. Removing Netfinity Director Server

A window appears that asks you to make sure that you have closed the server console and for confirmation to uninstall the code:

IBM Univ	zersal Manageability Services
?	Are you sure you would like to remove IBM Universal Manageability Services from your computer?
	<u>Y</u> es <u>N</u> o

Figure 64. Remove the code

Click Yes to confirm the uninstall procedure.



Figure 65. Confirmation to uninstall Netfinity Director Server configuration and database

Click **Yes** to delete the Netfinity Director configuration files.

IBM Universal Manageability Services Uninstallation	×
It is necessary to restart your machine before attempting to reinstall Universal Manageability Services.	
Would you like to restart now?	
<u>Y</u> es <u>N</u> o	

Figure 66. Reboot the system after uninstall the code

Click Yes to restart the system.

**Note:** After rebooting, all of the folders on the Start Menu bar for Netfinity Director and UM Services are removed.

## 2.2.4 Install Netfinity Director Console

The Netfinity Director Console is your interface to the Netfinity Director Server environment. From the console you can:

- Define how network resources are grouped and displayed.
- · Create, schedule and initiate task to manage your network resources.
- Configure operation parameters for Netfinity Director tasks.
- Select preferences for the presentation of Netfinity Director windows.
- Define user IDs and user access to Netfinity Director resources.

#### 2.2.4.1 Prerequisites for Netfinity Director Console

The Netfinity Director Console requires the following hardware and software:

- Pentium Processor
- 32 MB RAM
- 40 MB of free disk space
- Windows NT 4.0 Workstation or Windows NT 4.0 Server, Windows 95 or Windows 98
- Service Pack 3 or higher
- TCP/IP networking protocol
- A network adapter that supports the TCP/IP networking protocol

#### 2.2.4.2 Installation procedure for Netfinity Director Console

The Netfinity Director Console installation begins the same way as the Netfinity Server installation:

• For Windows NT: (X:\win32\install\ibmsetup.exe)

This will start a wizard that guides you through the installation process. There are fewer windows and options to follow if you just need the console installed. After the product introduction windows, click **Console**:

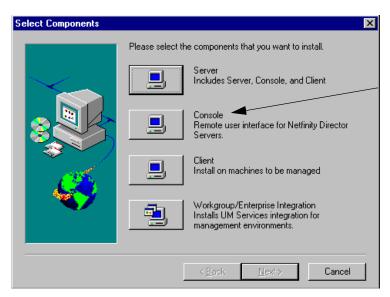


Figure 67. Console installation

It will begin to install the console code:



Figure 68. Install Windows 95/98 and Windows NT

Click Next to proceed.



Figure 69. Destination directory of Netfinity Director Console

This wizard will ask for the installation path where the Netfinity Director should be installed. If you want to make any changes (a different disk or directory) click **Browse;** otherwise, click **Next** if you accept the default path.

After selecting the disk and directories you will be asked to commit the path for the installation program. Click **Yes** to continue with the installation.

In our installation, the Netfinity Director Console used 32 MB space on the disk.

IBM UM Services Setup Complete	
	IBM UM Services installation is complete. You can restart your computer now, or restart it later. Choose below. Remove any disks from their drives, and then click Finish to complete Setup. Yes, I want to restart my computer now. No, I will restart my computer later. Please note, if you Reinstall your web browser at a later date, it may be necessary to Reinstall the Java VM included with this product. Refer to the release notes for further information
	< <u>B</u> ack <b>Finish</b>

Figure 70. Reboot the server after installing Netfinity Manager Console

Click Finish and the system will reboot.

🧓 IBM Netfinity Director	Þ	🛒 Management Console
Microsoft Internet Server (Common)	►	👸 Uninstall
Netscape Communicator	•	View readme

Figure 71. Start Netfinity Director Console

After the system reboots the following options are added into the Start menu.

• View readme

Click this folder and it will open a text file with important hints and tips. If you use Windows 9x or Windows NT. This file can be opened with the simple editor program Notepad.

Uninstall

If you click that folder you will start the deinstallation procedure of Netfinity Director.

Management Console

The Netfinity Director Console is now startable from the Start menu.

While the console starts up, a logon window will appear prompting you for a server name, user ID and password. The server name is the TCP/IP hostname or address of the Netfinity Director server.

IBM Netfinity Director Login	X
Netfinity D	IBM
Netfinity Director Server	barryps2.ibmus2.ibm.com
User ID	barry
Password	
	OK Cancel Help

Figure 72. Netfinity Director Console logon

Enter the user ID and password to log on to the Netfinity Director server. If the user ID and password are valid the Netfinity Director Console will start.

**Note:** No icon is added to the task menu bar by the Netfinity Director Server, Console or Client installation.

# 2.2.5 Uninstall Netfinity Director Console

To uninstall the Netfinity Director Console code click **Start -> Programs -> IBM Netfinity Director -> Uninstall**:

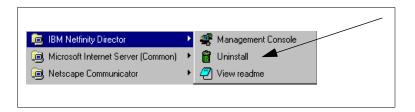


Figure 73. Deinstallation of the Netfinity Director Console

A window appears that asks you for confirmation to uninstall the code:

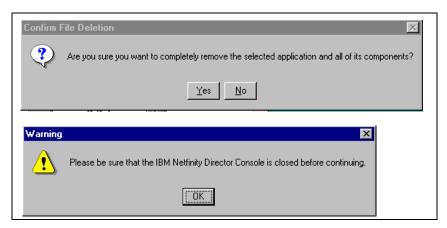


Figure 74. Confirmation to uninstall Netfinity Director Console code

Make sure you have closed the Netfinity Director Console and then click **Yes** to confirm the uninstall procedure.

Remove Programs From You	r Computer
	unInstallShield will remove the software 'IBM Netfinity Director' from your computer. Please wait while each of the following components is removed
	Shared program files
510	Standard program files
	Folder items
	Program folders
	Program directories
	Program registry entries
	OK.

Figure 75. Uninstall Netfinity Director Console files

Click **OK** and the system will close the de-installation window but not perform the reboot automatically. Therefore, you have to restart the system manually.

Note: All folders on the Start menu bar and the corresponding files are removed.

## 2.2.6 Install Netfinity Director Client

The Netfinity Client code resides in each managed system and provides information to the Netfinity Director Server. The Netfinity Director Client does not have a GUI, but it can be managed through a Web browser.

## 2.2.6.1 Prerequisites for Netfinity Director Client

The Netfinity Director Client requires the following hardware and software:

• 486 Processor or Pentium class processor

- 16 MB RAM (for Windows 3.11 and OS/2)
- 32 MB RAM (for Windows 95 OSR2, Windows NT Service Pack 4 or higher
- 6 MB of free disk space
- TCP/IP, NetBIOS, IPX, SNA or SLIP
- A network adapter that supports one of the networking protocols above.

## 2.2.6.2 Installation procedure for Netfinity Director Client

The Netfinity Director Client installation begins the same way as the server and the console installation began. Execute  $x:\win32\install\ibmsetup.exe:$ 

Select Components		×
	Please select the	e components that you want to install.
		Server Includes Server, Console, and Client
		Console Remote user interface for Netfinity Director Servers.
		Client Install on machines to be managed
		Workgroup/Enterprise Integration Installs UM Services integration for management environments.
		<back next=""> Cancel</back>

Figure 76. Installing the client

Click **Client** to start your installation. The installation options for UM Services are presented:

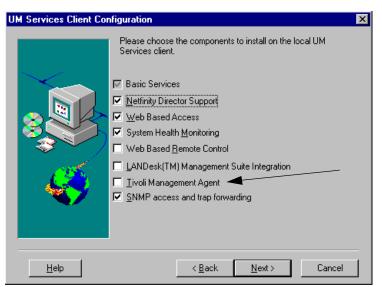


Figure 77. Welcome screen for installing Netfinity Director Client

We added support for Tivoli Management Agent. If you chose **Web Based Access** you should not choose **Web Based Remote Control**.

**Note:** If you have a beta level of Netfinity Director installed you must completely uninstall the beta code before you install this product. Click **Next** to proceed. Click **Yes** if you accept the license agreement.

The window will prompt you to install the Netfinity Director Client software:

<b>Choose Destination Loc</b>	ation 🗙		
	Setup will install UM Services into the following directory. To install to this directory, click Next.		
	To install to a different directory, click Browse and select another directory. You can choose not to install UM Services, by clicking Cancel to		
	exit Setup. NOTE: Changing the default directory should only be done by advanced users.		
	Destination Directory		
	C:\Program Files\IBM\UMS Browse		
	< Back Next > Cancel		

Figure 78. Choose directory to install the code

This wizard will ask for the installation path where Netfinity Director should be installed. If you want to change the default installation directory click **Browse**. Otherwise, click **Next**. After selecting the disk and directories you will be asked to commit the path for the installation program. Click **Yes**. You then need to enter the user ID that has administrator rights:

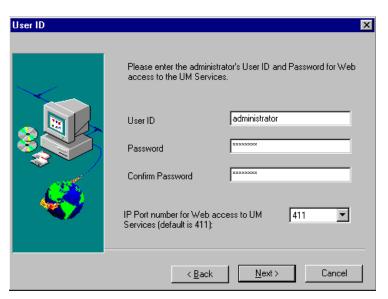


Figure 79. Administrator rights

**Note:** If you change the default port from 411 to anything else you should make note of it. You might also need to change some MMC coding later on so we advise against doing that.

You can have the UM Services application added to the Start menu:

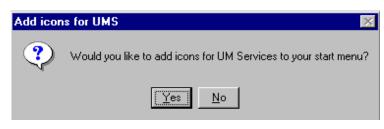


Figure 80. Start menu updates

You need to click **Yes** in the following figure if you want to support remote control of this client:

Director	Remote Control 🛛 🕅
?	Would you like to install Remote Control Support for Netfinity Director?

Figure 81. Enable Remote Control for Netfinity Director Client

Depending upon your environment you can alert the user before you take control of their screen:



Figure 82. Authorization to take control

In our installation, the Netfinity Director Client used 6.1 MB of disk space.

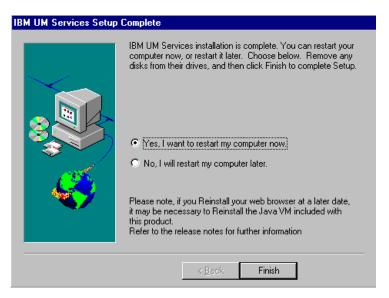


Figure 83. Reboot the system

Click **Finish** and the system will reboot. The following options are added to the Start menu:

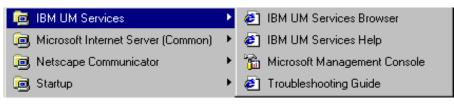


Figure 84. Start Netfinity Director Client

# 2.2.7 Uninstall Netfinity Director Client

To uninstall the Netfinity Director Client click **Start -> Settings -> Control -> Add/Remote Programs**:

Add/Remo	ve Progra	ms Properties			? ×
Install/Uni	nstall   Win	dows NT Setup	1		
Þ	To install a drive, clict	a new program fr < Install.	om a floppy dis	k or CD-RO	м
				Install	
3	Windows.	ing software car To remove a pr nts, select it from ove.	ogram or to mo	dify its install	
Comet C	kcrobat 4.0 Sursor er 5.0 Servi	er			-
IBM Nel Microso Microso Microso Netscap	finity Direct it Internet E it Internet In it Windows ie Communi	or xplorer 5 and Int iformation Serve Media Player 6.4	r		
			Ad	d/ <u>R</u> emove	
		OK	Cancel	<u>Ap</u>	oly

Figure 85. Remove Netfinity Director Client

Click Add/Remove:

IBM Univ	rersal Manageability Services 🛛 🕅
?	Are you sure you would like to remove IBM Universal Manageability Services from your computer?
	Yes No
IBM UM S	ervices
2	Uninstalling UM Services, Please Wait

Figure 86. Remove UM Services

Click Yes.

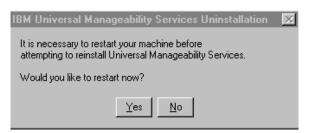


Figure 87. Uninstall Netfinity Director Client files

Click **Yes** and the system will close the de-installation window but not perform the reboot automatically. Perform the restart from the Start menu.

**Note:** The uninstall log file will be placed in your system's directory on Windows 9x and Windows NT systems. In our case it was a Windows 95 operating system and the log file was called Tivoli.log and placed in C:\Windows\temp.

# 2.3 Supporting Netfinity Director clients

The Netfinity Director's distributed architecture is designed to work across a wide variety of LANs, WANS and other network topologies. Netfinity Director supports a comprehensive set of tasks for Netfinity Director Client nodes.

In Figure 88 you see a basic configuration example that shows how Netfinity Director Server, the Netfinity Director Console and the Netfinity Director Clients can communicate together.

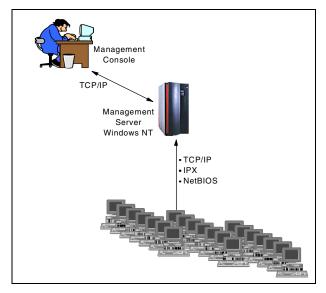


Figure 88. Netfinity Director environment

## 2.3.1 How to use the Netfinity Director Client

This section shows how the Netfinity Director Server manages the Netfinity Director Client and how to use the server's functions.

In our environment we had one Netfinity Director Server with the Netfinity Director Console installed on the same machine and an additional system with the Netfinity Director Client installed.

The following example shows how the Netfinity Director Console is subdivided and where you can find the agents that are supported.

Figure 89 shows you three columns:

1. The left column

This column shows you a list of different groups. It is divided into different operating systems, such as Microsoft Windows 95, Windows 98, Windows NT,

IBM OS/2, and cluster systems or systems with Netfinity Director software installed.

You can preselect your existing environment in these groups or in additional groups that are created by the operator at the Netfinity Director Console.

2. The middle column

This column shows you the contents of the selected groups. It shows you all the systems with the appropriate software installed.

3. The right column

This column shows the list of tasks that you can select to support and manage your systems. You can start these tasks by dragging them onto groups or systems.

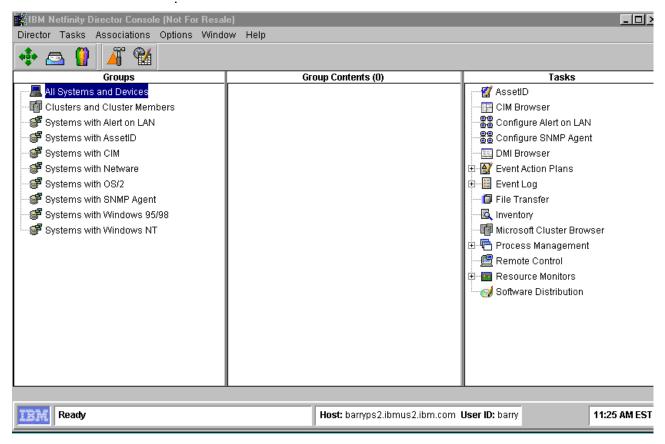


Figure 89. Netfinity Director environment and tasks

# 2.4 NetWare V5.0 agents

The Netfinity Director Client supports the Netfinity Director Server functions that are necessary to perform management operations such as software distribution, inventory, user administration and distributed monitoring. Instead of software applications sitting on top of the desktop, the Netfinity Director Client automatically determines what is needed to perform a given management operation.

# 2.4.1 Prerequisites for Netfinity Director Client on NetWare V5.0

This installation procedure describes how to install the Netfinity Director Client on a NetWare V.5.0 server. The minimum requirements that you need for this installation are:

- A NetWare V.5.0 server
- A network connection
- · A workstation or server acting as a client

For our installation we had a token-ring connection and we used Windows NT Server V4.0 as the client.

There are three steps that you need to follow to prepare the Windows NT server:

1. Check the communication on both servers.

Before you start the installation you should verify that both systems can communicate with each other. An easy way to make sure that they can communicate is to start a ping request with TCP/IP. Therefore, we recommend that you load the TCP/IP stack on the Novell server, and issue a load ping command on the server's console to verify that the two systems can communicate.

2. Install and configure the Gateway Service for NetWare on the NT Server.

This is a service provided with the Windows NT installation CD-ROM that enables you to log on from your NT system to a Novell server. To install it, access the Network properties applet by clicking **Start -> Settings -> Control Panel**. Once done, double-click the **Network** icon, and the Network applet will be launched.

Then, click the **Services** tab. Click **Add...**, and in the list, select **Gateway (and client) Services for NetWare**, and click **OK**. If Windows NT asks you for a location to find some files, specify the D:\i386 folder, where D: is the letter of the CD-ROM image.

Select Ne	twork Service ? 🗙
	Click the Network Service that you want to install, then click OK. If you have an installation disk for this component, click Have Disk.
<u>N</u> etwork	Service:
📃 DHO	P Relay Agent
Gate	eway (and Client) Services for NetWare
	osoft DHCP Server
📃 🔜 Micr	osoft DNS Server
📃 📇 Micr	osoft Internet Information Server
🔲 Mior	andth TCP //P. Printing
	<u>H</u> ave Disk
	OK Cancel

Figure 90. Install the Gateway Services for NetWare

After the files are copied the Services tab of the Network properties will reappear. Click **Close**. Windows NT will perform some protocol bindings and will ask you to reboot. Click **Yes** to restart the computer.

After you reboot and log on again, a dialog box similar to Figure 91 will appear:

Select Net₩are Logon	×
Username: Administrator	
Preferred Server:	-
C Default Tree and Context	
Iree:	
Context:	
🔲 <u>R</u> un Login Script	
OK Cancel <u>H</u> elp	

Figure 91. The NetWare logon dialog box

In the Preferred Server field, enter the server that you want to connect to, or if you are going to use NDS to log in, specify a Tree and a Context.

This dialog box won't appear again after you fill it in, but you can access it to make changes from the icon GSNW, which is located in the control panel for Windows NT. Once that is done you will be ready to access the NetWare servers from your system.

**Note:** Installing the Gateway Service for NetWare will install a new network transport protocol, IPX/SPX.

3. Map the NetWare servers disk to the Windows NT server.

Now you need to map a drive to a volume on the NetWare server where you want to install the Netfinity Director Client. In order to this, double-click the **Network Neighborhood** icon, then in the window that appears, double-click the **Entire Network** icon.

🔮 Entire Network	_ 🗆 🗵
<u>F</u> ile <u>E</u> dit <u>V</u> iew <u>H</u> elp	
AS/400 Network Drives (Shared Folders)	
Microsoft Windows Network	
🖓 NetWare or Compatible Network	
1 object(s) selected	

Figure 92. Select NetWare network

As you can see in Figure 92, you now have access to another kind of network, the NetWare or Compatible Network.

Double-click **NetWare or Compatible Network**. The next windows that appear show you the connections for all NetWare or compatible networks. Select the connection that you will map to get access to the disks.

NetWare or الم	Compatible Network	
<u>F</u> ile <u>E</u> dit ⊻iew	<u>H</u> elp	
♥ ibm Nw-manfred		
2 object(s)		

Figure 93. Connections to the NetWare server

Double-click the connection that you want to access. You should see a security prompt:

Enter Network Password	×
Incorrect password or unknown username for:	OK
\\Wtmtps	Cancel
Connect As:	<u> </u>
Password:	

Figure 94. ID and password request

Type in your user ID and password. The NetWare system volume is displayed and you can see the data on the NetWare disk.

	w-ma	nfred					_ 🗆 🗵
<u>F</u> ile	<u>E</u> dit	⊻iew	<u>H</u> elp				
<u> </u>	/s						
1 obj	ect(s)						

Figure 95. NetWare server volume

You need to map that volume to your Windows NT server.

<b>I Nw-manfred</b> File Edit View Help		_ 🗆 ×
	1	
Dpen Explore		
a∰Add to Zip		
Map Network Drive		
Create <u>S</u> hortcut		
A Properties	prk resource.	1.

Figure 96. Map network drive

Right-click the volume to start the process. Select Map Network Drive.

In Figure 97 you provide a fixed drive letter for the network drive that you have already accessed.

Map Networ	k Drive		×
<u>D</u> rive:	🚍 G:	<b>•</b>	OK
<u>P</u> ath:	\\Nw-manfred\sys	1	Cancel
<u>C</u> onnect As:			<u>H</u> elp
	☑ <u>R</u> econnect at Logon		

Figure 97. Map Network Drive

Use the pull-down to select a drive letter for the NetWare drive. Enter your user ID in the Connect As field and click the box **Reconnect at Logon**. Click **OK** to finish. The Windows NT Explorer will show this disk with the name that you chose.

# 2.4.2 Installation procedure for Netfinity Director Client on NetWare V5.0

This section shows the installation procedure for the agent on a NetWare V5.0 server. The Netfinity Director Client installation can be started either by inserting the CD into the CD-ROM drive or by starting the setup.exe (X:\agent\novw32\en\setup). After starting setup.exe a welcome window comes up and introduces you to the installation of the Netfinity Server Management Agent program.

Click **Next** to proceed. Click **Yes** to accept the license agreement and to continue. Then select the drive where you want to install the Netfinity Director Client.

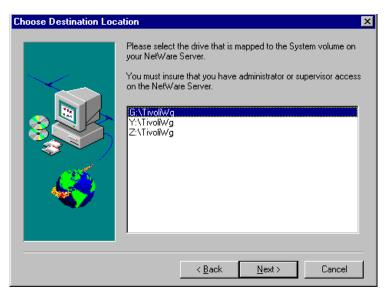


Figure 98. Drive selection during NetWare installation

Select the drive that you mapped in 2.4.1, "Prerequisites for Netfinity Director Client on NetWare V5.0" on page 63. Click **Next** to continue. The files are copied to the disk.

After the files have been copied you have to configure the Netfinity Director Client at the NetWare server console. Read the contents of this next screen very carefully. You have to perform three steps at the NetWare console so that the network server can load the Netfinity Director Client and use it:



Figure 99. Configure the NetWare console

Perform three steps at the NetWare console:

1. Enter the following: Search add sys:tivoliwg

The server will add the path *tivoliwg* to the system.

2. Configure the Netfinity Director Client by loading twgipccf

Type in twgipccf. This will prompt you with a menu that shows you the Director network driver configuration. Enter 6 to save it and 8 to exit this menu.

3. Start the agent by loading twgipc

Type in twgipc. This will start the program at the NetWare server. Reboot the NetWare server. The agent will now automatically run on every Novell server boot.

Click Finish on the Windows NT server to complete this part of the installation.

Make sure that you have configured Netfinity Director for the IPX protocol. To verify this, start the configuration menu by **Start -> Programs -> Netfinity Director -> Network Driver Configuration**.

Network Driver Configuration		×
System Name: 23-FF426		
Network Drivers:		
Novell IPX <enabled> NetBIOS <enabled> TCP/IP <enabled> SNA/APPC <enabled></enabled></enabled></enabled></enabled>		
Network Time-Out (sec):	15	
<ul> <li>Require User Authorization for Screen Access</li> <li>Enable Wake-On-LAN (if supported by Network Card)</li> </ul>		
OK Cancel	<u>H</u> elp	

Figure 100. Netfinity Director configuration for IPX

Click **Driver Enabled** for Novell IPX and then **OK**. After you have finished these steps you can manage the NetWare server from the Netfinity Director Server.

Figure 101 shows you that the NetWare system is now available and ready to be managed from your Netfinity Director Server.

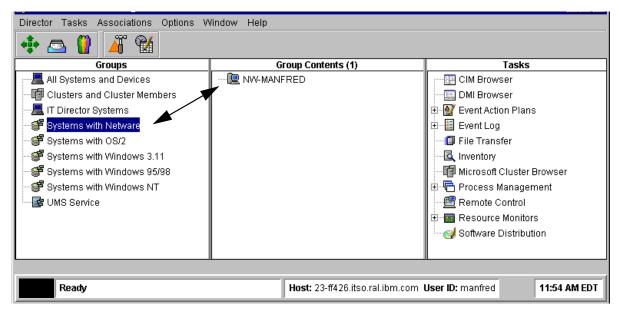


Figure 101. Netfinity Director Console with NetWare agent

# 2.4.3 Uninstall Netfinity Director Client on NetWare V5.0

There is no deinstallation procedure for the Netfinity Director Client on NetWare V5.0. You have to perform the deinstallation manually on the NetWare Server. Perform the following steps at the NetWare server:

- Select the system console on the NetWare Server.
- Type in load nwconfig and press Enter.
- Select the file NCF files Options and press Enter.
- Select Edit AUTOEXEC.NCF and press Enter.

- Find the entry load twgipc and mark it with a # or delete the entry. The # makes it a comment card so that it won't execute.
- Press the Esc button and save the changes.
- Use the **Esc** button to go back to the basic prompt on the console.

The following steps are performed on the Windows NT server:

- Use the Windows NT Explorer and delete the directory tivoliwg on the mapped disk.
- Restart the NetWare server.

The uninstall of the Netfinity Director Client on the NetWare Server is complete.

# Chapter 3. Core functions

This chapter describes the main functions and processes for the Netfinity Director management environment. We cover the fundamental functions that are part of Netfinity Director. Our goal is to introduce the core Netfinity Director features as well as group management.

# 3.1 Netfinity Director environment

In this section, we present the Netfinity Director interface and the main options you can use to personalize and customize Netfinity Director according to your needs.

# 3.1.1 Logging on for the first time

Since Netfinity Director comes with three components (Server, Console and Agent), we must first use the console to log on to the Netfinity Director Server, which can be installed locally or on a remote computer. A TCP/IP link must be established between the console and the server.

#### Click Start -> Programs -> IBM Netfinity Director -> Management Console.

You have to provide the name of the server on which the product has been installed and the user ID and the password that you set up during the Netfinity Director installation.

IBM N	etfinity Director Login		×
	Netfinity D	IBM irector	
	Netfinity Director Server User ID	barryps2.ibmus2.ibm.com barry	
	Password	****	
		OK Cancel Help	

Figure 102. Authentication to access Netfinity Director Console

If the Netfinity Director Server service is not started, you won't be able to connect to the server. The first time you start the server it will take some time to initialize. In addition, if you have a large database it might take a little bit of time to start up. As with most things, that will depend upon your system's resources.

You can specify a TCP/IP address instead of a hostname when you log in. The dialog box will have the server name of the last user that logged in. For the first login, it will be your machine name, so check this parameter if you can't connect.

# 3.1.2 The console

The first time the management console is displayed, you have to discover the systems in order to manage them (Netfinity Director can automatically discover systems that have a supported management agent installed on them). To launch the discovery process select **Tasks -> Discover Systems -> All Systems and Devices**.

After a few seconds, the computers that have a supported Netfinity Director Agent installed will begin to appear on the console. Your management console will look similar to Figure 103. See 3.1.4, "Configuration and preferences" on page 74, for details on how to configure discovery parameters.

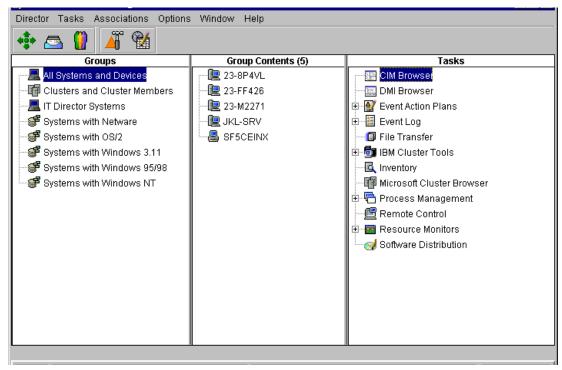


Figure 103. The Netfinity Director Console

You have five main parts in the console Graphical User Interface (GUI). The first is the menu bar. It is used to set up the configuration and preferences settings. The second is the tool bar, which contains several icons. They are shortcuts to some useful tools for the task and option menus.



Figure 104. The tool bar

Third, you have a set a three panes. The Groups pane represents the groups of computers that come with Netfinity Director as well as the groups you define for your environment. By clicking a group (All Systems and Devices is selected by default), you see in the Group Contents pane the computers that belong to the selected group. The tasks pane represents the main functions you can perform upon the groups with Netfinity Director.

Groups	Group Contents (4)	Tasks
📠 All Systems and Devices		CIM Browser
📲 Clusters and 🗰 ster Members		🔤 DMI Browse
📠 IBM Netfinity(tm) Systems		🗄 🔮 Event Action Plans
🔜 IT Director Systems		🗄 📲 Event Log

Figure 105. The three panes

Under the three panes, you can have a console ticker tape. When configured, it is used to scroll some informational messages related to events or to the resource monitors you can configure as shown in Figure 106.



Figure 106. CPU utilization related to a managed computer appears on the console ticker tape

Finally, there is the status bar. It acknowledges the actions you perform, displays the name of the server where you are logged on, the login ID you are using, and the date and time on the server.

Ready	Host: 9.24.105.202 User ID: Administrator	10:06 AM EDT	
			4

# 3.1.3 The menus

The menus allow you to perform several base administration tasks on the Netfinity Director Server and to set several configuration and preference options.

The Director menu allows you to exit the console.

The Tasks menu lets you:

- Launch and automate discovery of the managed clients. When one is discovered its name will appear in the Group Contents Pane.
- Access the message browser, a tool that contains all the pop-up messages you can receive. To learn how to configure pop-up messages, see "Build an action plan" on page 125.
- Build a custom query, a function that lets you create your own request on the inventoried items of the managed systems. See 3.3.2.2, "Customizing inventory" on page 140 for more information.
- View the inventory, which displays inventory information for all the systems and devices known by Netfinity Director. Refer to 3.3.2.2, "Customizing inventory" on page 140.
- Access the Event Action Plan Builder, a configuration tool that lets you specify which events will be monitored on your systems. This tool is used to define how you want to be warned of the events. See 3.3.2.1, "Event action plans" on page 118 for examples of how to use it.
- Launch the scheduler, a tool covered in 3.2.7, "Task scheduling" on page 88.

Figure 107. The status bar

 Access the Active Console Viewer, a window where you can see all the users currently connected to the Netfinity Director Server and send them pop-up messages.

The Associations menu is used to modify the display for the Group Contents pane. You can choose to view the managed items categorized by type of system (for example, Netfinity Director Agent or MPM agent), or without any category.

The Options menu is discussed in 3.1.4, "Configuration and preferences" on page 74.

#### 3.1.4 Configuration and preferences

Settings related to Netfinity Director Server or to console settings are accessible from the Options pull-down menu.

Click **Options -> Consoles Preferences** to configure Netfinity Director's Console background image and appearance settings. You can either enable or disable the confirmation messages you get while using the product.

Click **Options -> Server Preferences** to set parameters, such as the frequency of the automatic inventory and the maximum event log and history entries.

You can set the default system discovery parameters by clicking **Options** -> **Discovery Preferences** on the Netfinity Director Console. You can configure MPM parameters (names of the MPM providers and auto-discovery interval), and settings related to the other branches of the network on which you wish to perform some automatic discovery.

Note: By default, automatic discovery is *not* turned on.

The Console Security menu manages users for the Netfinity Director Server. You can add console users with this tool and configure the actions they can perform on the console that is connected to the Netfinity Director Server.

# 3.2 Base functions

This section will cover Netfinity Director Base functions. They are presented in the Tasks pane of the main console, and *most* of them can be launched by dragging a task over a computer, or over a group.

- Inventory management
- CIM compliant
- DMI compliant
- Resource Monitoring
- File transfer
- Remote Control
- Task Scheduling
- Process Management
- Event Management and logging
- Cluster Browser for MicroSoft Cluster Server (MSCS) systems

# 3.2.1 Inventory management

Netfinity Director allows you to collect hardware and software inventory on a group of systems or on an individual system. This can be done in different ways. To show you the product mechanics, we provide a step-by-step example of how to gather your inventory. It is assumed that you already have installed Netfinity Director, as described in 2.2.2, "Installation procedure for Netfinity Director Server" on page 38.

**Note:** On an initial discovery, Netfinity Director runs an inventory scan that is important for such things as remote control.

Director Tasks Associations Options	Window Help		
	Window Help All Systems and Devices IT Director Systems MPM Systems	ар Contents (7)	Tasks         Image: CIM Browser         Image: DMI Browser         Image: Event Action Plans         Image: Event Log         Image: File Transfer
<ul> <li>Systems with Windows 3.11</li> <li>Systems with Windows 95/98</li> <li>Systems with Windows NT</li> </ul>			Inventory     Inventory     Inventory     Microsoft Cluster Browser     Process Management     Image: Remote Control     Remote Control     Resource Monitors     Image: Software Distribution
Ready		Host: 23-ff406 User ID: jo	hann 1:28 PM EDT

Figure 108. Discovery of systems is one of the first things to do

If no managed computers appear in the Group Contents pane, you can launch an automatic discovery by selecting **Tasks -> Discover Systems -> All Systems and Devices** from the menu bar, or you can manually add some systems to the console by performing the following actions: right-click in a free space of the pane titled Group Contents and choose **New -> Netfinity Director Systems** in the contextual menu. The following window appears:

Add IT Director	Systems	×
System Name:	равватн	
Network Protocol:	TCPIP	•
Network Address:	9.24.106.2	25
	ок	Cancel

Figure 109. Adding a system manually

Enter the name under which you want the remote system to be recognized in Netfinity Director, choose the type of protocol to use to communicate with that system and enter its protocol-related address. Although Netfinity Director provides some functions to perform discovery through gateways, this is a quick and efficient way to add one system that you have connectivity to.

Once some systems have been added to the Group Contents pane, choose one and right-click it. In the contextual menu, choose **Perform Inventory Collection**.

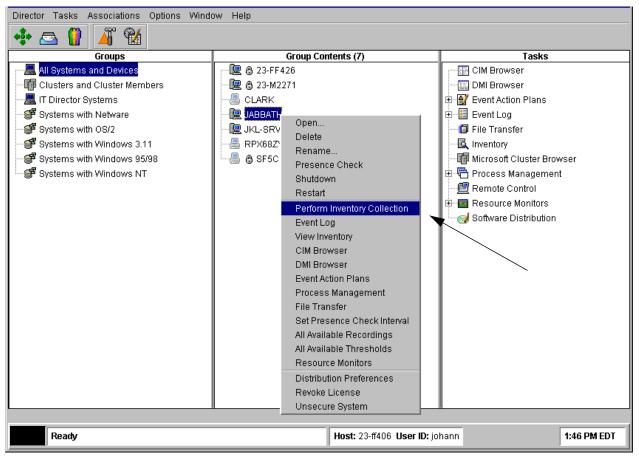


Figure 110. Gather inventory from the system Jabbath

Note that you can launch the inventory function on several systems at once by selecting them in the Group Contents pane, or by selecting the group to which they belong.

An information window like the following one appears:

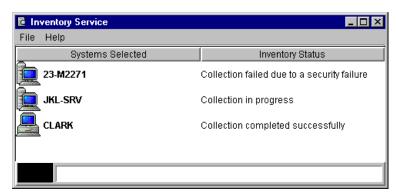


Figure 111. Inventory collection in progress on several systems

Once the inventory function is complete, select the system (or systems) and right-click it. Select **View Inventory** in the contextual menu, as shown in Figure 112 and a window similar to Figure 113 will appear.

🗟 In	ventory Service		
File	Help		
_	Systems Selected	Invento	iry Status
	23-M2271	Collection completed	successfully
	CLARK	Collection completed	successfully
	JKL-SRV	Collection completed	View Inventory
			Sort 🕨

Figure 112. The inventory has completed

Figure 113 shows you on the left pane the items for which some information was gathered by Netfinity Director. The right pane shows you the details associated with the selected item (for example, Disk). Since three systems were queried, we can compare the information related to the selected item for the three systems, CLARK, JKL-SRV, and JABBATH.

CINVENTORY QUERY BROWSER: JKL-SRV, CLAF	RK, JABBATH								
File Selected Options Help									
Q									
Available Queries				Query	/ Results:Disk	(9)			
∄ 💼 Custom	Name (Sys	Type (Disk)	Index (Disk)	Media Loaded (Disk)	Removable	Cylinders (	Sectors per	Total Size (	Heads (Dis
🗄 😋 Standard	CLARK	HARDDISK	1	TRUE	FALSE	783	63	6289447	255
- 🗟 Basic System Information	CLARK	FLOPPY	1	FALSE	TRUE			0	
Component Id	CLARK	CDROM	2	TRUE	TRUE			651328	
	JABBATH	HARDDISK	1	TRUE	FALSE	784	63	6297480	255
IDE Adapter	JABBATH	FLOPPY	1	FALSE	TRUE			0	
S Installed Memory	JABBATH	CDROM	2	FALSE	TRUE			0	
IP Address	JKL-SRV	HARDDISK	1	TRUE	FALSE	1106	63	8883945	255
IPX Address	JKL-SRV	FLOPPY	1	FALSE	TRUE			0	
Keyboard	JKL-SRV	CDROM	2	FALSE	TRUE			0	

Figure 113. The result of an inventory query on three systems

For example, the system CLARK owns three disk type elements: a hard-disk, a floppy drive, and a CD-ROM. The column Media Loaded tells us if there are any media inserted in the drive (the value TRUE informs us that a hard drive is present in the system CLARK).

By default, the inventory will query for hardware, software, system (for example, BIOS information) and user information. You can customize the inventory by defining your own query to choose what you want displayed. The queries we have defined appear in the left pane, under the Custom folder.

Figure 114 shows an example where the customized query (called My\_query) displays some network information.

🗟 Inventory Query Browser: JKL	-SRV, JABBA1	TH I				_ 🗆 ×
File Selected Options Help						
Ð						
Available Queries			Query	Results:My_q	uery(2)	
📮 😋 Custom 📃	Name (Sys	Computer	User Nam	Registered	IP Address	Workgroup (LAN Network
My_query	JKL-SRV	23-FF406	johann	IBM	9.24.106.154	
🖃 🚖 Standard	JABBATH	JABBATH	Administrator	IBM ITSO R	9.24.106.25	WORKGROUP
Basic System Inform						
Component Id						
Disk						
IDE Adapter						
IDE Device						
Installed Memory						
Ready						

Figure 114. Display example of a customized query

**Note:** The inventory is saved locally on the Netfinity Director Server after the completion of the information gathering. Therefore, even if a system is unreachable, you might be able to see its components. On the other hand, you have to launch a new inventory task to get the most up-to-date information.

We did a manual inventory, but this can be automated with the Netfinity Director Scheduler. See 3.2.7, "Task scheduling" on page 88 to automate the inventory collection.

#### 3.2.2 CIM compliant

CIM instrumentation is imbedded in UM Services and you can access the CIM browser from the console. 1.4.2, "What is CIM and why is it important?" on page 12 provides more details about CIM and how it works.

The CIM scheme is supported with Netfinity Director on the following platforms:

- Windows 98 with the addition of the Windows Management Instrumentation (WMI)
- · Windows 95 with the addition of the WMI
- Windows NT 4.0 (workstation and server) with the addition of WMI

The appropriate CIM instrumentation is installed with UM Services.

# 3.2.3 DMI compliant

UM Services comes with a DMI service provider, and a DMI browser is available with the console. The DMI browser is accessible only if the DMI service provider is active on the target machine.

Figure 115 shows the DMI browser. Using the DMI browser you can check the level of the DMI service provider that is installed on the target computer.

🗰 DMI Browser: JABBATH						_ 🗆 ×		
File Help								
DMI Components		Groups: ComponentID						
Line JABBATH     Line Jabbath     Service Layer Characteristics     Service Layer Security     Securit		Name: ComponentID Class: DMTF ComponentID 001 Group ID: 1 Description: This group defines the attributes common to all components. This group is required.				up is		
EZAdmin Application Control	•							
Artisoft Remote Utilities	Nan	ne Í ID	Value	Access	Type	MaxSize 8		
Remote Control Component ID	Manufa	cturer 1	Intel Corporation	MIF READ	MIF_DISPL	64 MIF		
Remote Control Settings	Product	: 2	Win32 DMI Service Provider		MIF_DISPL	64 MIF		
File Transfer Component ID	Version	3	Intel DMI Service Provider (Win32) V2.54	MIF_READ_	MIF_DISPL	64 MIF		
	Serial N	lum 4	unsupported	MIF_READ_	MIF_DISPL	64 MIF.		
	Installat	tion 5	Tue Jul 13 12:02:39 EDT 1999	MIF_READ_	MIF_DATE	28 MIF.		
	Verify		component exists, functionality good	MIF_READ_	MIF_INTEG	4 MIF.		
	•					4		
Ready								

Figure 115. The Netfinity Director DMI Browser

More details on DMI can be found in 1.4.5, "How is DMI used?" on page 33. DMI support is available only on the following platforms:

- Windows 98 with the addition of the Intel DMI Version 2.0 and 2.0s
- Windows 95 with the addition of the Intel DMI Version 2.0 and 2.0s
- Windows NT 4.0 (Workstation and Server) with the addition of the Intel DMI Version 2.0 and 2.0s

If you install UM Services, no upgrade is necessary to manage these systems, since UM Services provides the appropriate DMI layer.

**Note:** If you have trouble accessing the DMI layer of a computer from the Netfinity Director Console, check that DMI services has been started. On Windows NT, you can check it in the Services applet of the control panel. It has a service called win32sl that must be started.

er <u>v</u> ice	Status	Startup	Close
SNMP	Started	Automatic 🔺	1
SNMP Trap Service	Started	Automatic	Start
Spooler	Started	Automatic	
CP/IP NetBIOS Helper	Started	Automatic	Stop
Felephony Service		Manual	-
Tivoli IT Director Support Program	Started	Automatic	Pause
TME10RC		Automatic	Continue
JMS HTTPServ	Started	Automatic	
JPS		Manual 🚽	Startup
win32sl	Started	Automatic 🔽	
			H <u>₩</u> Profiles
tartup Parameters:			

Figure 116. The DMI Service on a NT system must be started when NT boot is complete

On a Windows 9x system, press Ctrl-Alt-Del to make the Tasks list appear and check to see if Dmistart is running. You can check the status of the DMI layer by looking at the file c:\Dmistart.log.

🕂 Close Program 🔀
untitled - Paint
C:\ Registry Editor
MS-DOS Prompt
Explorer
Dmistart
Unsecapp
Loadwc
Umsdisk
Umsaol
Xpmgr 🗾
WARNING: Pressing CTRL+ALT+DEL again will restart your computer. You will lose unsaved information in all programs that are running.
End Task Shut Down Cancel

Figure 117. The DMI layer is active on a Windows 9x system

# 3.2.4 Resource monitoring

With Netfinity Director you can monitor your system's resources. To access the data that you want to look at a on a given system, you just have to right click on the name of the computer, and choose **Resource Monitors** from the contextual menu:

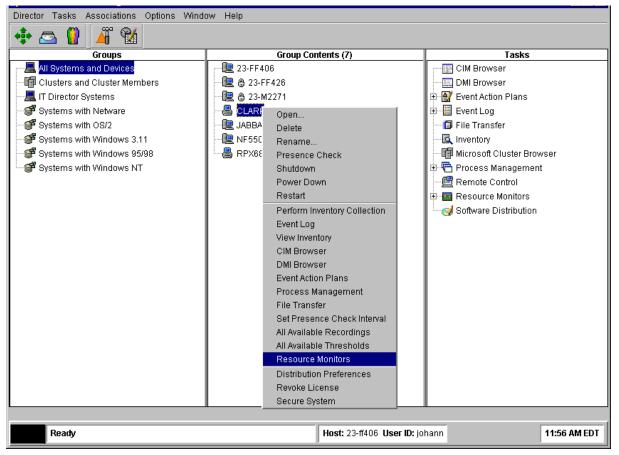


Figure 118. Access resource monitors

The system's resources can vary from one system to another. For example, if you compare the available resource lists in Figure 119 you can see that the Windows NT-based system NF5500 has some monitors (DMI and TCP/IP) not available on the Windows 95 system.

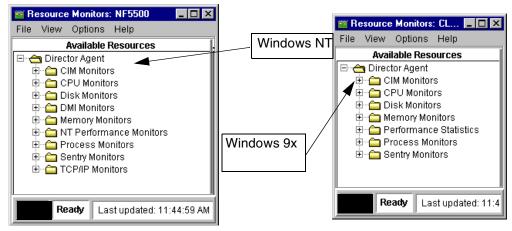


Figure 119. Resource Monitors

Resource Monitors may in fact depend on the software agents installed and the operating system's abilities and settings.

Note: Netfinity Director does not allow you to set monitors on Groups of systems.

You can configure Netfinity Director so that you will be warned of any change in the monitors. For example, we are going to configure it to generate a warning message when the space remaining on the C: drive of a remote computer is less than 50 MB.

First, right-click a system and choose **Resource Monitors** in the contextual menu (in our case, the system called CLARK). This will bring up the Resource Monitors window. In the left pane, expand the **Director Agent** tree, to make the resource Drive C: Space Remaining visible.

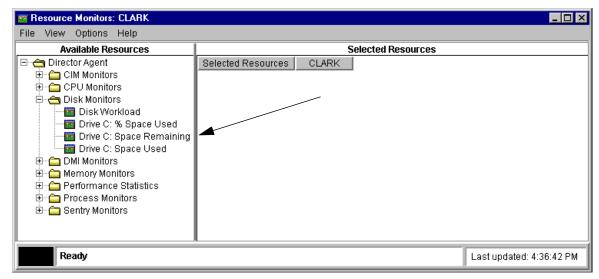


Figure 120. The resources to monitor

Right-click **Drive C: Space Remaining** and in the menu appearing choose **Add** to **Selected Resources Table** (Figure 121).

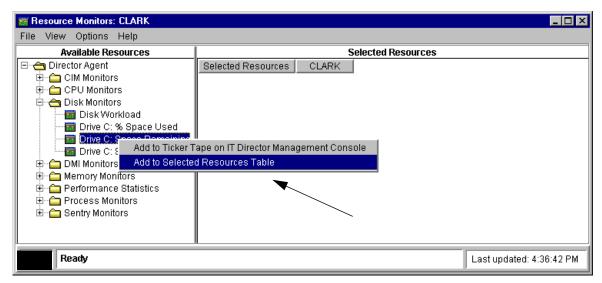


Figure 121. Select it

Once you do that you should see the caption Drive C: Space Remaining in a new row of the table, with the words Collecting Initial Data next to it, as shown in the following figure:

📷 Resource Monitors: CLARK			
File View Options Help			
Available Resources		Selected Resources	
🖃 😋 Director Agent	Selected Resources	CLARK	
E CIM Monitors	Drive C: Space Rem	Collecting Initial Data	
🗄 🖆 CPU Monitors			
📮 😋 Disk Monitors			
Disk Workload			
Drive C: % Space Used			
Drive C: Space Remaining			
🔤 Drive C: Space Used			
🗄 🖆 🧰 DMI Monitors 🗄 📹 Memory Monitors			
Ready			Last updated: 4:36:42 PM

Figure 122. Free space remaining on the C: drive of the system CLARK is being collected

You should then see the free space available on the computer:

📷 Resource Monitors: CLARK		
File View Options Help		
Available Resources		Selected Resources
🖃 🚖 Director Agent	Selected Resources	CLARK
E - CIM Monitors E - CPU Monitors	Drive C: Space Rem	541.1

Figure 123. 541.1 MB are available on the drive C: of CLARK

Now, you can right-click the value collected and select **Individual Threshold** in the contextual menu.

Selected Resources	Selected Resources	
Selected Resources		
Drive C: Space Rem	CLARK 541.1	Remove Row Record Individual Threshold Hide Column

Figure 124. This is the value we want monitor

The System Threshold window appears:

💐 System Threshold: Cl	LARK		×
Thresholds (Director #	Agent][Disk Monit	ors][Drive C: Spa	ce Remaining]
Name:			
Description:			
Enabled to generate	events		
🗌 🗔 Generate events on	value change		
Maximum queued event	s D		
Minimum Duration	5	+ minute(s	š) 🔽
Resend Delay	0	+ hour(s)	•
Above Or Equal	rezitur <b>–</b> Oritigael		High Error High Warning Normal Low Warning Low Error
Threshold Event Sev	verity: 📕 Critical	📔 Warning 🚦	Harmless
ОК	Cancel	Delete	Help

Figure 125. The Threshold window

We fill in values in this window in order to get a message in the event log when the free space available on the drive C: of the system CLARK goes below 50 MB.

First, indicate the name of your threshold. You can also add a description of what this threshold is supposed to do. Check the box **Enabled to generate events**. This means the threshold that is defined is active. Checking the **Generate events** on value change box generates an event whenever there is a change to the monitored resource.

In the Minimum Duration field, enter 10. If the free space on drive C: goes below 50 MB in a 10-minute interval then an event will be generated (nothing will happen if the free space was under 50 MB for 9 minutes, then grew to 55 MB before the 10th minute). Finally, in the box Below or Equal, put the value 50 and click **OK**.

Note that you can set the status of an alert by filling in the corresponding field. In our example, the alert will have a Low Warning status, since we put the value 50 on the left of the caption Low Warning.

💐 System Threshold: Cl	LARK			×
Thresholds [Director Agent][Disk Monitors][Drive C: Space Remaining]				
Name:	Under 50 N	1B		
Description:	Warning w	hen a driv	e c: is under (	50 MB
🔽 Enabled to generate	events			
🔲 🗖 Generate events on	value chang	e		
Maximum queued events	5	0		<u>·</u>
Minimum Duration	5		÷minute(s	;) 🔹
Resend Delay	0		÷ day(s)	•
Above Or Equal				High Error High Warning Normal Low Warning
Threshold Event Sev	erity: 📒 Cr	ritical 📗	Warning 🚦	Harmless
ок	Canc	el	Delete	Help

Figure 126. The system threshold for CLARK

The system threshold window disappears.

**Note:** Once you have placed a monitor on a resource, this resource will then appear in the Resource Monitors window with a small icon to the left of its value, as shown in Figure 127.

📷 Resource Monitors: CLARK			
File View Options Help			
Available Resources		Selected Resources	
🖃 😋 Director Agent 📃 🔺	Selected Resources	CLARK	
🗄 💼 CIM Monitors	Drive C: Space Rem	540.8	
📔 🗄 🗁 CPU Monitors 🔤			
🖹 🚔 Disk Monitors		Ŧ	
📃 🔤 Disk Workload 🖵			
▲ ►			
Requesting table refres	h		Last updated: 5:28:18 PM

Figure 127. The icon indicates the resource is monitored

In order to see what happens when the threshold is met, you can test by copying some files to the target system, in a temporary directory until you reach the space threshold.

After the specified amount of time is spent (here, 10 minutes), right-click the system's name in the Netfinity Director Console, and select **Event Log**. An entry similar to the following one should appear (Figure 128):

Figure 128. A warning related to the remaining drive space of CLARK has been issued

# 3.2.5 File transfer

This is a graphical tool that performs file transfers between your local system and a remote computer. It also performs additional functions, such as directory creation, deletion of files or selected folders, renaming objects, or accessing their properties.

**Note:** The file transfer is done using Administrator privileges. That means that a user of the Netfinity Director Console who has the right to make some file transfers on a system will override the permissions defined on this remote system.

Source	ile System	Target File System	
_ocal	-	5CEINX	▼ Other
Name	Size Mod Attri	me Size	Modified A
🕀 🚞 configsafe	07/	-Ξ A:\	
🗄 🚞 cosessions	07/	- C:)	
🦳 📃 _inst32i.ex_	312 07/ A	🗄 💼 \$user 03/11	7/1999 01:01 PM A
🔤 _isdel.exe	8 KB 07/ A	🖕 😋 95backup 🛛 🛛 03/11	7/1999 01:04 PM
🔤 🔤 _setup.dll	5.9 07/ A	- 🗐 net40bit.bat 276 bytes 01/13	3/199911:28 AM A
🔤 🔤 _setup.lib	298 07/ A	🔤 netscape.exe 3.907 MB 11/2	1/1997 05:37 PM A
🔤 appti.z	13 07/ A	🗄 🧰 🎦 95drive 03/11	7/1999 01:03 PM
🔤 🗐 cmosutil.z	85 07/ A	🖕 📥 Acrobat3 03/11	7/1999 01:01 PM
🔤 🗐 common.z	35 07/ A	🖻 😋 Reader 03/11	7/1999 01:01 PM A
🔤 🗐 data95.z	37 07/ A	i∄ 🗁 ActiveX 03/11	7/1999 01:01 PM A
🔤 🗐 dataNT.z	64 07/ A	⊕ 🛅 Browser 03/11	7/1999 01:01 PM A
- 🗐 disk1.id	3 by 07/ A		7/1999 01:01 PM A
🔤 🗐 domain16.dll	15 07/ A	HELF Open 03/1	7/1999 01:01 PM A
🚽 🗐 domain32.dll	33 07/ A	🕀 🗁 Optio Create Directory 03/1	7/1999 01:01 PM A
🔤 excepmon.z	61 07/ A	PLUC Refresh 03/1	7/1999 01:01 PM A
- 🗐 HCMAPFL	16 07/ A		3/1996 01:39 PM A
🗐 help.z	60 07/ A	ACR( Rename 10/0	1/1996 10:22 PM A
🖳 🗐 insthelp.exe	26 07/ A 👻		7/1996 01:23 PM A

Figure 129. The File Transfer GUI

You can't modify the attributes (archive, system, read-only) of a file, nor its access permissions.

### 3.2.6 Remote control

Remote control is performed by selecting a system with the right mouse button and dragging the **Remote Control** task onto it. You can launch the graphical remote control on several systems at once. That opens several remote control windows on your system. When you are going to control several systems, it is suggested that you use the maximum colors available on your system to avoid color confusion. In addition, it's suggested, for performance considerations, to not use the maximum resolution and color depth available when you configure a remote system. That saves some bandwidth and the remote control will be quicker and smoother.

For security reasons a computer can be configured so that the user has to agree before the system can be taken over.

88 Remote Access Request	×
TCPIP::9.24.106.154: A remote manager is requesting a remote console takeover of this workstation. E access? (This request will timeout and deny access in 15 seconds.)	Do you wish to allow this

Figure 130. The user has to agree to remote control

In order to configure this security feature, you must launch the Network Driver Configuration from the Netfinity Director program group of the computer you want to protect:

C:\NT4SF	V\Profiles\All	Users\Start	Men 💶 🗙
<u>E</u> ile <u>E</u> dit ⊻ie	ew <u>H</u> elp		
🔄 Tivoli IT D	irector	-	1 Tel
		Â	2
Management Console	Network Driver Configuration	Uninstall IT Director	View readme
I 1 object(s) selec	cted 4	27 bytes	

Figure 131. Accessing the screen access configuration tool

Then, you must check the box Require User Authorization for Screen Access.

Network Driver Configura	ition		×
System Name: JKL-SR	V		1
Network Drivers:			1
Novell IPX <disabled> NetBIOS <enabled> TCP/IP <enabled></enabled></enabled></disabled>	Driver <u>E</u> nabled		
Network Time-But (sec):		30	
<ul> <li>✓ Require User Authoriza</li> <li>✓ Enable Wake-On-LAN</li> </ul>	tion for Screen Access (if supported by Network Car	d)	
OK	Cancel	<u>H</u> elp	

Figure 132. The Network Driver Configuration program

Click **OK** to leave the Network Driver Configuration utility. The change will take effect when the computer is rebooted.

**Note:** If you have installed Co-Session or the UM Services Remote Control service on a system, it can't be controlled by Netfinity Director. You must install the Netfinity Director Agent to access it.

### 3.2.7 Task scheduling

Netfinity Director lets you schedule some tasks to execute on a single computer or a group of systems. The tasks can execute whenever you need them to and you can also schedule them to run multiple times. You can be informed about the result of the tasks from a generated event.

🞇 New Scheduled Job 💶 🔍
File Help
Date/Time Task Targets Options
Schedule the task to execute on a date and time
Date : 7/14/1999
Time : 12:00 AM 💌 Repeat
Do task on 7/14/1999 at 12:00 AM
Server Date : Mon Jul 12 15:26:55 EDT 1999
Server Date is already converted to console time zone.

Figure 133. Scheduling a task

For demonstration purpose, we scheduled the inventory to be taken on several target systems. First, from the Netfinity Director main console, select **Tasks -> Scheduler**.

Director Tasks Associations Options	Window Hel	p		
Discover Systems				
Message Browser     Build Custom Query     Edit Software Dictionary     Cl     View Inventory     IT     Event Action Plan Builder     Sy     Scheduler	23-FF4	sten TH	Tasks CIM Browser CIM Browser CIM Browser CIM Browser CIM Event Action Plans CIM COG All Events	
Sy <u>Active Console Viewer</u> Systems with Windows 3.11 Systems with Windows 95/98 Systems with Windows NT	🖳 JKL-SF	0	Event Log     File Transfer     Microsoft Cluster Browser     Microsoft Cluster Browser     Process Management     E Remote Control     Resource Monitors     Software Distribution	
n n				
Ready		Host: jkl-srv.itso.ral.ibm.com	er ID: Administrator 2:25 PM EDT	

Figure 134. Accessing the scheduler

File Selected Help						
Calendar Jobs	s					
<b>\$</b>			July			4
Sun	Mon	Tue	Wed	Thu	Fri	Sat
27	28	29	30	1	2	3
4	5	6	7	8	9	10
11	12	13	14	15	16	17
18	19	20	21	22	23	24
			馩 4:48 PM : I	🚿 12:00 F ▲ 💇 12:00 F 🗸	12:00 PM ∰ 1:39 PM : I	🌪 12:00 PM
25	26	27	28	29	30	31
🌪 12:00 PM	🌪 12:00 PM	🌪 12:00 PM	🌪 12:00 PM	🌪 12:00 PM	🌪 12:00 PM	🌪 12:00 PM
1	2	3	4	5	6	7
顝 12:00 PM	🌪 12:00 PM	醶 12:00 PM	🌪 12:00 PM	🌪 12:00 PM	🌪 12:00 PM	🌪 12:00 PM
Ready						

Figure 135. The Scheduler window

In Figure 135, the main Scheduler window looks like a calendar. Past, present and future scheduled jobs appear in the corresponding days where they will be launched.

Click **File -> New Job...** and the New Scheduled Job window will appear, as shown in Figure 136.

🐕 New Scheduled Job	. 🗆 🗙
File Help	
Date/Time Task Targets Options	
Schedule the task to execute on a date and time	
Date : 7/23/1999 💼	
Time : 12:00 PM Repeat	
Do task on 7/23/1999 at 12:00 PM	
Server Date : Fri Jul 23 15:49:12 EDT 1999	
Server Date is already converted to console time zone.	
Ready	

Figure 136. The New Scheduled Job window

Fill in the date and time fields for when you want the inventory to occur. Then, select the **Task** tab.

🐒 New Scheduled Job	
File Help	
M .	
Date/Time Task Targets Options	
	Selected Task
	Available
Inventory	
🕸 🖶 Miscellaneous System Tasks	
🗄 🖷 Process Management	
	Relat
	Select
Ready	

Figure 137. The Task tab

Select the **Inventory** field in the Available pane and click **Select**. The Inventory icon will then appear in the Selected Task pane as shown in the following figure:

🞇 New Scheduled Job	_ 🗆 ×
File Help	
Date/Time Task Targets Options	
Selected Task	
Inventory	I
	I
	I
Available	
m 🔂 Inventory	
🕀 🖶 Miscellaneous System Tasks	I
🗄 🖷 Process Management	I
Select	
Ready	

Figure 138. The Inventory task has been selected

Now that you have chosen what to do, you must select the target system on which the inventory will take place. Select the **Targets** tab and check the option **Specify a list of systems as targets**.

W New Scheduled Job	
File Help	
Date/Time Task Targets Options	
C Use a group as the target	
Specify a list of systems as targets	
Available	Selected
23-FF426 Carsten JABBATH JABBATH KL-SRV KF5500 RPX68ZYH SF5CEINX	
Add	Remove
Ready	

Figure 139. We could have chosen some groups of computer by selecting use a group as the target

In the left pane, select the system(s) that will be the target of the inventory collection. You can select one and click **Add** in order to make its name appear in the right pane, or select multiple systems at once by holding down the Ctrl key.

Drag and drop is also supported. Once all the systems have been selected and added to the selected tab, you will see a display similar to Figure 140.

🙀 New Scheduled Job	
File Help	
Date/Time Task Targets Options	
O Use a group as the target	
<ul> <li>Specify a list of systems as targets</li> </ul>	
Available	Selected
23-FF426           E carsten           SF0ZZY           JABBATH           JABSATH           JKL-SRV           RF5500           RPX68ZYH           SF5CEINX	JABBATH JKL-SRV R NF5500
Add	Remove
Ready	

Figure 140. We have chosen our targets

Select the **Options** tab to set several useful options (Figure 141).

The options to be set are the four options in the Events pane, which let you know if the scheduled task executes OK.

🐕 New Scheduled Job 📃 🗆 🗙
File Help
Date/Time Task Targets Options
Special Execution Options
Delay execution on unavailable systems
Execute on systems that are added to the target group
Execution History
Limit execution status to the last 5 🚽 job executions.
Delete execution status that is older than 30 🛱 days.
Events
Generate an event when a job execution completes successfully
Generate an event when a job execution completes with errors
Generate an event when a target system completes successfully
Generate an event when a target system completes with errors
Ready

Figure 141. Some options related to the scheduled job execution are available

Click **File -> Close**. You will be prompted to confirm the job. Click **Yes**. The program then asks you to enter a name for the job you have scheduled.

🐒 Save J	ob	×
9	Please enter a descriptive job name	
$\checkmark$	Inventory	
	Ok Cancel	

Figure 142. Enter a title for the job

Then click **OK**. You will see a dialog box confirming that the job has been created.

😭 Save Job Confirmation	×
Job saved.	
OK	

Figure 143. It's done

The New Scheduled Job window will then disappear. You can check in the Scheduler window, at the date and time you chosen, that there is an entry corresponding to the job you just created.

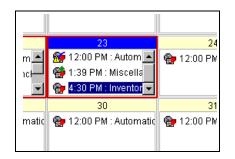


Figure 144. The Inventory task we created appears in the calendar

Close the Scheduler window.

A few minutes after the date and time where the job was scheduled, you should find a status report in the event log of the group the target systems belong to. You could also right-click one of the target system and select **Event Log**.

I Event Log	: JABBATH					_ 🗆 ×
		Liele				
File Edit V	iew Options	s Help				
💭 👔						
			Events (8) - Last 24 Hours			
Date	Time	Event Type	Events (6) - Last 24 Hours	System Na	Severity	c
	4:30:24 PM		Job 'Inventory' at 23-Jul-99 4:30:00 PM		Harmless	Aleri 🔺
	4.30.24 PM 2:16:38 PM		Monitor 'Boot' Changed: 'LastBootUp	JABBATH		Aleri
					Warning	
	2:11:34 PM		System 'JABBATH' is online	JABBATH	Harmless	Res
	1:51:36 PM		System 'JABBATH' is offline	JABBATH	Harmless	Alert
	1:43:39 PM	Director.To	System 'JABBATH' is online	JABBATH	Harmless	Res -
	4	Director Lo	Puotore (IIIIIIIIIIII) Puo ottino		Lormicoo	•
			Event Details			
Keywords	Values	;				
Date	7/23/19	99				
Time	4:30:24					
Event Type	Pirector	<del>r.Scheduler.Sy</del>	stem.Success.Inventory			
Event Text	Job 'Inv	entory' at 23-Ju	II-99 4:30:00 PM for system 'JABBATH' c	ompleted succ	cessfully)	
System Nam						
Severity	Harmle	SS				
Category	Alert					
Group Name						
Sender Nam	e JKL-SR	(V				
1						
l	1					
Rea	idy					

Figure 145. The Inventory task for system Jabbath completed successfully

## 3.2.8 Process management

Each time a program is launched on a computer by either the user or an application it creates a process in memory. These processes can be managed. To launch Netfinity Director's process manager, right-click the name of a computer in the Group Contents pane of the main console and choose the item **Process Management** from the contextual menu.

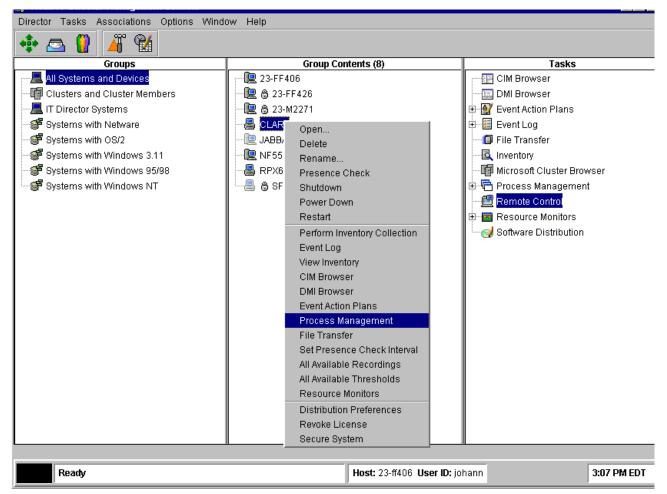


Figure 146. Access to the Process Management function

The resulting window will vary, depending on the operating system on the target client.

Applications							
Name	Process ID	Parent Process ID	Thread Count	Priority	Monitored	٩	
C:\WINDOWS\SYSTEM\KERNEL32.DLL	4279184679	21		High	No	<b>•</b>	
C:\WINDOWS\SYSTEM\MSGSRV32.EXE	4294951903			Normal	No		
C:\WINDOWS\SYSTEM\MPREXE.EXE	4294956751	42: Close Applicat	ion	Normal	No		
C:\WINDOWS\SYSTEM\IDHELPER.EXE	4294856955	4294956751	2	Normal	No		
C:\PROGRAM FILES\INTEL\ALERT ON LAN	4294865099	4294956751	9	Normal	No		
C:\WINDOWS\SYSTEM\mmtask.tsk	4294839047	4294951903	1	Normal	No		
C:\PROGRAM FILES\IBM\UMS\HTTPSERV	4294841111	4294956751	20	Normal	No		
C:\PROGRAM FILES\TIVOLI\LCF\BIN\WIN9	4294893059	4294956751	2	Normal	No		
C:\PROGRAM FILES\IBM\UMS\DIRECTOR\	4294895631	4294956751	4	Normal	No		
C:\WINDOWS\SYSTEM\DMCONFIG.EXE	4294874047	4294841111	2	Normal	No		
C:\PROGRAM FILES\IBM\UMS\WIN32SL.EXE	4294882843	4294844507	8	Normal	No		
C:\WINDOWS\SYSTEM\RPCSS.EXE	4294834895	4294882843	5	Normal	No		
C:\PROGRAM FILES\IBM\UMS\DIRECTOR\	4294727567	4294895631	5	Normal	No		
C:\PROGRAM FILES\IBM\UMS\DIRECTOR\	4294737055	4294895631	2	Normal	No		
C:\WINDOWS\SYSTEM\WBEM\WINMGMT.E	4294721455	4294727567	7	Normal	No		
C:\WINDOWS\EXPLORER.EXE	4294651991	4294951903	2	Normal	No		
C:\WINDOWS\SYSTEM\SYSTRAY.EXE	4294693479	4294651991	1	Normal	No		
C:\IBMAV95\IAVTIM95.EXE	4294693635	4294651991	4	Normal	No		
C:\IBMAV95\TRYICN95.EXE	4294675027	4294651991	2	Normal	No –	-1	
C:\PROGRAM FILES\REAL\REALPLAYER\R	4294684511	4294651991	7	Normal	No		
C:\PROGRAM FILES\TIVOLI\LCF\BIN\WIN9	4294593083	4294651991	1	Normal	No		
C:\CFGSAFE\AUTOCHK.EXE	4294590715	4294651991	1	Normal	No		
C:\WINDOWS\RunDLL.EXE	4294582635	4294651991	1	Normal	No		
C:\LOTUS\SMARTCTR\SUITEST.EXE	4294609403	4294651991	1	Normal	No	-1	

# 3.2.8.1 Process management on Windows 9x systems

Figure 147. Process Management on a Windows 9x system

Each process generated by a running application appears in a row in the process management window, followed by some information, such as its Process ID (PID), the Parent Process ID (a process can launch other processes, called children processes), and the number of threads related to it and its priority.

The last column indicates whether or not the process is being monitored by Netfinity Director.

You can add a monitor to a process. That is discussed in 3.2.8.2, "Process management on a Windows NT machine" on page 97.

# 3.2.8.2 Process management on a Windows NT machine

Process Management is slightly different when you access a Windows NT system. The window displays three tabs, according to the type of program that is running on the remote computer: an Applications tab, a Win32 Services tab, and a Device Services tab.

#### The Applications tab

The Applications tab (Figure 5) lists the process with which you can interact (usually some program applications), and displays for each of the processes a set of information about the environment in which these processes were launched. This information is summarized in Table 4.

Row	Meaning
Name	The name of the process running. Usually, it is the name of the executable that generated this process.
PID	A number that identifies the process.
User	The name of the user who launched the process.
Thread count	The number of tasks generated by the process.
Priority	The priority can determine the amount of time the CPU will execute the process before executing another one.
Monitored	Indicates if this process is watched by Netfinity Director.
Memory usage	The amount of virtual memory the process uses.

Table 4. Informations given about the processes in the Applications tab

Applications   Win32 Serv	ices Device :	Services					
Name	Process ID	User	Thre	ead Count	Priority	Monitored	Memory Usage
SERVICES	46		18		Normal	No	2880K
LSASS	51		13		Normal	No	1544K
SPOOLSS	78		7		Normal	No	896K
httpserv	88		5		Normal	No	872K
PDS	92		9		Normal	No	908K
lofd	98		5		Normal	No	1704K
LLSSRV	110		9		Normal	No	1092K
RPCSS	118		8		Normal	No	1456K
ShutUsr	122		3		Normal	No	336K
SNMP	129		8		Normal	No	3208K
SNMPTRAP	133		4	Add To N		No	984K
RCSERV	137		4			No	340K
twgiposv	116		2	Close Ap	oplication	No	452K
twgipc	145		6		High	No	2176K
twgescli	156		9		High	No	3404K
AOLAgt	159		12		Normal	No	2040K
C:\PROGRA~1\IBM\UMS	162	SYSTEM	4		High	No	2904K
XFR	180		4		Normal	No	896K
PSTORES	197		5		Normal	No	224K
MSGSYS	200		9		Normal	No	1204K
WinMgmt	203		12		Normal	No	2428K
unsecapp	146		3		Normal	No	2352K
logon.scr	263		2		Idle	No	1560K

Table 5. The Applications tab of the Process Management window

You can either show the available actions in Figure 5 or close the application by using the right mouse button on the row of the process.

1. Close Application

This function will end the remote process.

2. Add to Monitors

This will make Netfinity Director watch the process and warn you if it starts, ends, or fails to start (you can define a time out).

For example, we are going to add an alert when the Clock process stops. First, we show how to remotely launch a program and then we monitor it. Once you are in the Process Management window, as shown in Figure 5, click **Actions -> Execute Command**.

🖷 Process Management : NF5500						
File	Actions	Monitors	Help			
Appl	Execute Command			Device Servic	es	
	Close	Application	n		Process	
LLSS	LLSSRV				108	
RPC	RPCSS				121	
Shut	ShutUsr				126	
<b>QNM</b>	P				122	

Figure 148. We are going to launch a program on the remote computer

This will bring up a dialog box similar to Figure 149. In the Command field, type clock, since this is the program you will execute remotely.

🖷 Execute Command - NF5500	
File Help	
Command Login Output	
Command clock	
🗌 Wait For Finish	/
Timeout (Seconds)	
	Execute

Figure 149. The Execute Command dialog box

Then click **Execute**. Note the dialog box will not disappear, but the Execute button will remain grey for a short period of time before being accessible. Click **Close**.

Wait a few seconds, and once the Process Management window has been refreshed, the Clock program will appear in the list of the processes (Figure 150).

Iraiurea	103		р U	ทบทาสเ	טאון	44UN		
WinMgmt	182		4	Normal	No	776K		
C:\PROGRA~1\IBM\UMS\Director\Bin\twgpr	196	SYSTEM	2	High	No	2148K		
(CLOCK)	157		2	Normal	No	324K		

Figure 150. The Clock program is now added to the list of the processes

Now, right-click the **Clock** row, and choose **Add to Monitors**.

WinMgmt	182		4	Normal	No	776K	
C:\PROGRA~1\IBM\UMS\Director\Bin\twgpr	196	SYSTEM	2	High	No	2156K	
CLOCK Add To Monitors	157		2	Normal	No	324K	•
Close Application							

Figure 151. This action will create a monitor for the Clock process

Note that once you choose Add to Monitors, nothing in particular is displayed in the window. However, in the background, this process gets added to the list of the processes that Netfinity Director will monitor.

We now have to specify the conditions of the monitoring. Click **Monitors -> Process Monitors** (Figure 152).

🖷 Process Management : NF5500						
File Actions	Monitors	Help				
Applications	Proces	s Monitors	Servio	es		
	Name	)		Process ID	User	Three
lofd				95		5
LLSSRV				105		9
RPCSS				118		8

Figure 152. The Monitors menu

This displays a window called Process Monitors as shown in Figure 153.

🍋 Process Monitors: NF5	500			_ D ×
File Edit Help				
Program Name	Start	Stop	Fail	Timeout (Seconds)
CLOCK				0
				] )

Figure 153. The behaviors we can control on the Clock process

You can monitor three behaviors of the Clock process:

- 1. Start An event will be generated each time the Clock program starts on the given computer.
- 2. Stop An event will be generated each time the Clock program ends on the given computer.
- 3. Fail An event will be generated each time the Clock program fails to start within the period of time specified in the Timeout column.

Then, check the box under the **Stop** column, as shown below:

🍋 Process Monitors: NF5	500			
File Edit Help				
Program Name	Start	Stop 🗡	Fail	Timeout (Seconds)
CLOCK				0
				) <b>&gt;</b>

Figure 154. Adding a monitor for when the Clock program stops

Save the monitor again by selecting **File -> Save**.

🖷 Process Monitors: NF5500								
File Edit Help								
Save	ne	Start	Stop	Fail	Timeout (Seconds)			
Create Task					0			
Close								

Figure 155. The monitor must now be saved

A dialog box appears as shown in Figure 156, asking you to confirm the action.

🎬 Confi	rmation	×
⚠	Are you sure you wish to replace monitors?	
	Yes No	

Figure 156. The confirmation dialog box, before saving the monitor

Click Yes, then close the Process Monitors window.

At this point you have configured Netfinity Director to warn you when the Clock program will stop running on the target computer. To check it, stop the Clock program on the managed system (you just have to exit the program, or if this is a remote system use the Close Application function as shown in Figure 5 on page 98).

In a short period of time (no need to close the Process Management window), if you right-click on the console the system where you created a monitor and choose **Event Log** in the contextual menu, you will see the event viewer related to this system with an entry similar to the one in Figure 157.

🧱 Event Log: JK	L-SBV						
File Edit View		Help					
<b>Q</b>							
			Events (3) - Last 24 Hours				
Date	Time	Event Type	Event Text	System Na	Severity	Category	Group I
7/22/1999 4:12	:55 PM	Director.Dir	Monitor 'PMON: CLOCK.EXE Stop' Changed:	JKL-SRV	Warning	Alert	
7/22/1999 12:0	2:35 PM	Director.Sc	Job 'Automatic Inventory' at 22-Jul-99 12:00:	JKL-SRV	Warning	Alert	
7/22/1999 12:0	12:35 PM	Director.Sc	Job 'Automatic Inventory' at 22-Jul-99 12:00:	JKL-SRV	Harmless	Alert	
•						-1	F
			Event Details				
Keywords	Values						
Keywords     Values       Date     7/22/1999       Time     4:12:55 PM       Event Type     Director.Director Agent.Process Monitors.Process Alert.Process Terminated.clock.exe       Event Text     Monitor 'PMON: CLOCK.EXE Stop' Changed: 'CLOCK.EXE' has changed values for 0:00-80. New value reported is "1".       System Name     JKL-SRV       Category     Alert       Group Name     JKL-SRV							
•	1						
Ready							

Figure 157. An entry in the Event Log informs us that a process has ended on a system

#### The Win32 Services tab

This tab is the equivalent of the **Control Panel -> Services** applet in Windows NT. Each service installed in the computer is listed along with its status. The contextual menu of the Actions menu gives you the opportunity to change the state of a service by pausing, starting, stopping, or continuing the service (continue a service means resuming it after having paused it). Not all of the services can be paused (refer to the Windows NT command net help pause).

🖷 Process Management : NF5500		
File Actions Monitors Help		
Applications Win32 Services Device Serv	ices	
Name	Service Status	
Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Locator	Stopped	
Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Service	Running	
Schedule	Stopped	
IBM Shutdown Manager	Running	
SNMP	Running	
SNMP Trap Service	Running	Pause Service
Spooler	Running	
Telephony Service	Stopped	Continue Service
TME10RC	Running	Start Service
Tivoli IT Director Support Program	Running	Stop Service
Line	Ctonnod	

Figure 158. The Win32 Services tab and the available actions

Note that you can't monitor if a service stops or starts. This must be done from the Applications tab, since some of the listed applications correspond to some services. You can't determine whether a service starts automatically, manually, or never.

### The Device Services tab

This tab is similar to the **Control Panel -> Devices** applet of Windows NT. These are the device drivers or low-level drivers that are listed here. You can start or stop one of these drivers, but you can't configure the startup environment as you can with the Windows NT applet.

🖷 Process Management : NF5500		_ 🗆 ×
File Actions Monitors Help		
Applications Win32 Services Device Service	ices	
Name	Service Status	
\$3	Running	
Scsiprnt	Stopped	
Scsiscan	Running	
Serial	Running	
Sermouse	Stopped	
Sfloppy	Stopped	
IBM Shutdown Manager Driver	Running Start Service	
Simbad	Stopped	
slcd32	Stopped Stop Service	
smbios	Running	
Sparrow	Stopped	•

Figure 159. You can interact on the Device Services

### 3.2.8.3 Process management on an OS/2 computer

The process management window on an OS/2 system is similar to what you get on a Windows 95 system, except you have three ways to end a remote process: send a Ctrl-C, a Ctrl-Break, or a Kill signal.

Applications							
Name	Process ID	Parent Proces	ss ID	Session ID	Thread Count	Monitored	E
C:\MPTN\BIN\DHCPCD.EXE	22	0		0	3	No	
C:\MPTN\BIN\CNTRL.EXE	16	0		0	8	No	1
C:\TCPIP\BIN\VDOSCTL.EXE	15	0		0	1	No	
C:\IBMCOM\LANMSGEX.EXE	14	0	Ado	To Monitors		No	
C:\MMOS2\MIDIDMON.EXE	9	0			-	No	
C:\OS2\SMSTART.EXE	6	0	Ctrl	-C		No	1
C:\OS2\FFST.EXE	13	6	Ctrl	-Break		No	]
C:\082\ERL0GGER.EXE	12	6	Kill	Process		No	]
C:\OS2\DMISL.EXE	11	6		0	2	No	1
C:\OS2\PMSHELL.EXE	23	1		1	26	No	1
C:\TIVOLIWG\TWGIPC.EXE	29	23		19	7	No	1
C:\TIVOLIWG\TWGPROCB.EXE	40	29		19	1	No	1
C:\TIVOLIWG\TWGMONIT.EXE	33	29		19	2	No	1
C:\082\ART\ARTCHRON.EXE	28	23		18	2	No	1
C:\OS2\PMSHELL.EXE	27	23		17	16	No	1
C:\OS2\PMSPOOL.EXE	26	23		16	4	No	1
C:\OS2\SYSTEM\HARDERR.EXE	24	23		0	4	No	1
C:\BONUSPAK\RS231B\PPM731B.EXE	8	1		0	5	No	1
C:\TIVOLIWG\EQNRCKB.EXE 4		1		0	20	No	1
(unknown)	2	1		n	1	Nn	1

Figure 160. Process Management with an OS/2 client

If you want to end a process you should first try the Ctrl-C signal (if the developer of the program that the process is related to has implemented Ctrl-C or Ctrl-Break signals in the code), then the Ctrl-Break, and if all else fails, send a Kill signal.

### 3.2.9 Event management and logging

An event indicates a change in the status of a computer or a component on a computer (this could be hardware components, for example a failing drive, or it could also mean software components). Any event that happens on a system can be intercepted by the agent and forwarded to the Netfinity Director Server. If the server is not reachable, the event will be queued and will wait in the memory of the managed system until the server becomes available. Therefore, if this system has to be rebooted, the queued event will be lost. To determine what events need to be forwarded, you must configure an event filter for each system or group of systems.

Events can be classified in terms of *severity* and there are different severity levels. Depending upon the severity appropriate actions can be configured.

Event Log: All Systems and Devices							
			Events (38) - Last 24 Hours				
Date	Time	Event Type	Event Text	System Na	Severity	Category	
7/12/1999	4:51:42 PM	Director.Dir	Monitor 'Disk space alert' Low Warning:	L. JABBATH	Warning	Alert	
7/12/1999	4:41:32 PM	Director.To	System 'JABBATH' is online	JABBATH	Harmless	Resolution	
7/12/1999	4:19:05 PM	Director.To	System 'JABBATH' is offline	JABBATH	Harmless	Alert	
7/12/1999	4:16:53 PM		System 'JABBATH' is online	JABBATH	Harmless	Resolution	
7/12/1999	4:16:53 PM		System 'JABBATH' is offline	JABBATH	Harmless	Alert	
7/12/1999	4:16:17 PM	Director.To	System 'CLARK' is offline	CLARK	Harmless	Alert	
7/12/1999	4:12:15 PM	Director.To	System 'JABBATH' is online	JABBATH	Harmless	Resolution	
7/12/1999	3:47:21 PM	Director.To	System 'CLARK' is online	CLARK	Harmless	Resolution	
7/12/1999	3:41:53 PM	Director.To	System 'CLARK' is offline	CLARK	Harmless	Alert	
7/12/1999	2:53:56 PM	Director.To	System 'JABBATH' is offline	JABBATH	Harmless	Alert	
7/12/1999	2:53:36 PM	Director.To	Svstem 'CLARK' is online	CLARK	Harmless	Resolution	
			Event Details				
KeywordsValuesDate7/12/1999Time4:51:42 PMEvent TypeDirector.Director Agent.Disk Monitors.Drive C: Space Remaining.Low WarningEvent TextMonitor 'Disk space alert' Low Warning: 'Drive C: Space Remaining' has been below or equal to 800 for 0:05:0System NameJABBATHSeverityWarningCategoryAlertGroup NameJKL-SRV							
Re	ady						

Figure 161. Netfinity Director Event Log for all the managed systems

We discuss event management in more detail in 3.3.2.1, "Event action plans" on page 118.

# 3.3 Group management

In 3.2, "Base functions" on page 74, we covered Netfinity Directors core functions with some individual systems. We are now going to explain the different groups of systems available in Netfinity Director, and the management tasks we can perform on them.

### 3.3.1 The different groups

There are many default groups in Netfinity Director and the ones that show up on your Netfinity Director Console are related to the types of the systems that are being managed.

#### 3.3.1.1 Defaults groups

The defaults groups are the one provided with Netfinity Director. These are:

• All Systems and Devices

This group contains a list of all the systems recognized by Netfinity Director (systems managed with a Netfinity Director Agent, or an MPM layer).

· Clusters and cluster members

This group contains the systems that are nodes of a cluster, and clusters themselves.

• Netfinity Director systems

This group contains the systems that have a Netfinity Director agent layer.

 Systems with NetWare, OS/2, Windows 3.11, Windows 95/98, and Windows NT

These systems are classified according to the operating system loaded

Note: Windows NT 3.51 systems are not supported.

• IBM Netfinity Systems

These are the computers managed through the Netfinity Manager MPM. This item appears only when MPM support is enabled.

• MPM Systems

This is the list of all the computers that are managed through MPM. This item appears only when MPM support is enabled.

Other default groups that are standards-related are:

- · Systems with Asset ID
- · Systems with Alert on LAN
- · Systems with CIM
- Systems with SNMP Agents

#### 3.3.1.2 Static groups

The static groups are groups whose members are determined and set by the Netfinity Director console administrator. These groups are created with any name you choose and you choose which systems are to be part of these groups.

For example, let's say you want to create a group that contains the computers in the human resources department. From the Netfinity Director main console, right-click in the **Groups** pane as shown in the following figure:

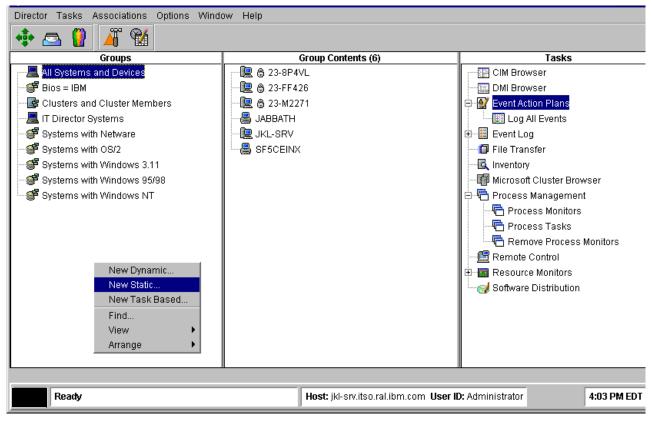


Figure 162. Creating a static group

It doesn't matter if any existing group is selected, just right-click in any blank area within the Groups pane. Then, choose the **New Static** option from the contextual menu.

You should see a new pane appear in the bottom left part of the Groups pane. Its title is Static Group Editor: New, as shown in Figure 163.

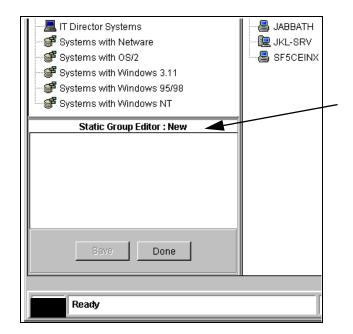


Figure 163. Static group editor

Now, select any computer you want in the Group Contents pane, and using drag and drop, copy it into the Static Group Editor pane. You will see a display similar to Figure 164, where computer icons appear in the pane.

**Note:** You can browse the different existing groups, and build the new group by dropping the computers you want into the new group you are creating. You are not limited to any filter since you are manually creating the group.

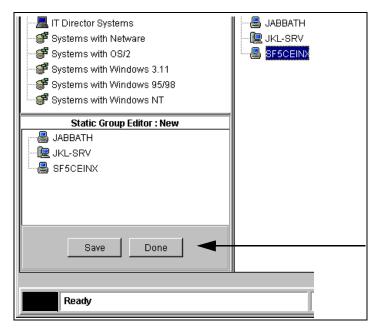


Figure 164. We have designated which computers will belong to the new group

Now, click the **Done** button. A dialog box will ask you to save the new group. Click **Yes** to confirm.

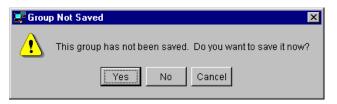


Figure 165. Save the group

You can give a name to this new group as shown in Figure 166.

📕 Save	As 🔀
٩	Enter a descriptive name for this group. Human Resources Dpt
	OK Cancel

Figure 166. A name for the new group

Once you have clicked **OK** in the Save as dialog box, the console's display will refresh, and you will see your new group in the Groups pane. If you select it, the computers you selected should be included in it (Figure 167).

Director Tasks Associations Options Windo	ow Help					
💠 🗠 👔 🎢 📽						
Groups	Group Contents (3)	Tasks				
All Systems and Devices		CIM Browser				
Clusters and Cluster Members	🖳 JKL-SRV	DMI Browser				
Human Resources Dpt		🖻 💕 Event Action Plans				
IT Director Systems		Log All Events				
🐨 💕 Systems with Netware		🕀 📲 Event Log				
Systems with OS/2		🗊 File Transfer				
Systems with Windows 3.11						
Systems with Windows 95/98						
Systems with Windows NT		🖻 🖷 Process Management				
		Process Monitors				
		Process Tasks				
		🔚 🖻 Remove Process Monitors				
		Remote Control				
		🗄 🔚 Resource Monitors				
		Software Distribution				
Ready	Ready         Host: jkl-srv.itso.ral.ibm.com         User ID: Administrator         4:17 PM EDT					

Figure 167. The new group Human Resources Dp with the three systems we added

Statics groups are a powerful and convenient way to map the system management functions to your organizational structure.

You can edit a static group if you want to add or remove some systems. From the main console, just right-click the group, and choose **Edit...** from the contextual

menu. The Static Group Editor pane will appear (as in Figure 164), and by right-clicking a computer, you will be able to remove it, or add some other ones with drag and drop.

#### 3.3.1.3 Dynamics groups

Dynamics groups contain systems that were selected based on some rules (determined by inventory items), and whose list is maintained by Netfinity Director.

For example, if you want you can create a group that contains only the systems having at least 140 MB of free space and ones that don't have Lotus Notes installed. The reason for that choice might be if you were looking for systems that didn't have Lotus Notes installed yet and you wanted to prepare the installation.

From the Netfinity Director main console, right-click in the Groups pane.

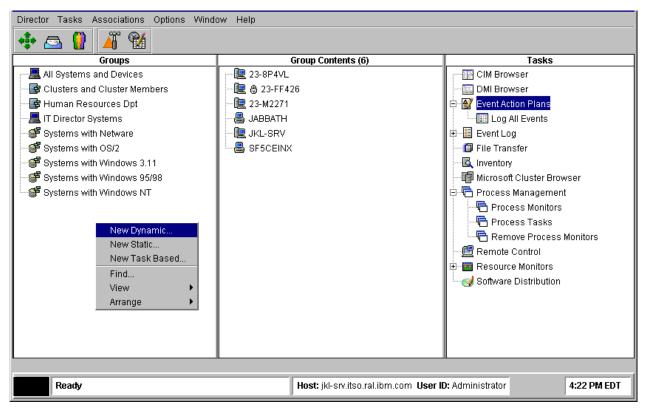


Figure 168. About to create a Dynamic group

It doesn't matter if any other existing group is selected, just right click in a blank area of the **Groups** pane. Then, choose the **New Dynamic** option in the context menu.

The Dynamic Group Editor window will open as shown in Figure 169. It shows you the criteria you can use to determine which systems will be part of your new group. Note that the values for each are related to the ones that had been detected during the inventories processes. For example, we can see, in Figure 169, that the existing values for IP Address correspond to the IP addresses implemented in the managed systems known by Netfinity Director. You can also choose some physical criteria (for example, number of IDE devices), related to

the system's information (for example, BIOS manufacturer or user information), or some software criteria.

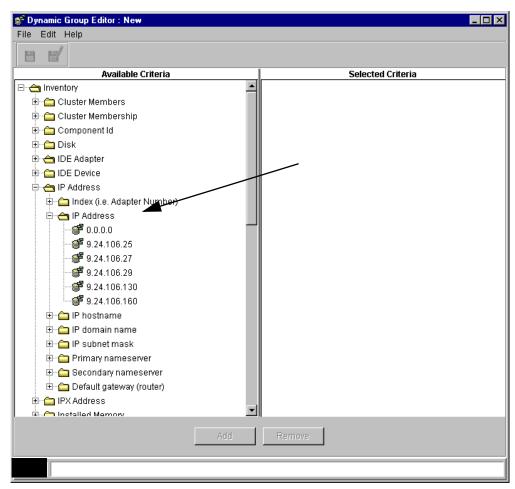


Figure 169. The Dynamic Group Editor

Expand the software branch and expand the Program Title branch to the Lotus Notes item. Then click **Add** in the bottom of the pane. The Lotus Notes criteria will be added in the right tab (under Selected criteria). By default, this query will look for all the systems that have Lotus Notes installed, but in this instance, we want the opposite: those that don't have Lotus Notes installed. So, in the selected criteria pane, right-click **Inventory / Software / Program Title = Lotus Notes**. A contextual menu as shown in Figure 170 will appear:

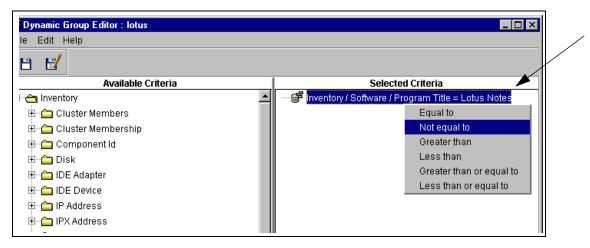


Figure 170. We changed a parameter of the selection criteria

As you can see, there are several logical expressions to choose from to express how Netfinity Director will use the criteria we selected. Click **Not equal to**, in order to make our query mean "seek all computers that don't have Lotus Notes installed on it". Once you do that, you should see the query get modified slightly. It changes to "Inventory / Software / Program Title  $^{-}$  Lotus Notes" (Figure 171).

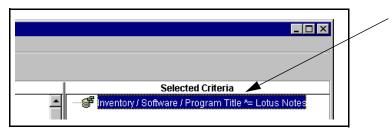


Figure 171. We changed the query according to our goals

We must now fine-tune the query with a second criteria: computers that have at least 140 MB of free space available. In the Available Criteria pane, expand the **Partition** branch, then the **Free Space** branch, and you should see listed there the different values about free space remaining in the partitions of the systems that are known by Netfinity Director.

According to Figure 172, within our managed clients some computers have 95 MB, 211 MB, or 635 MB of free space, but we don't see appear the value of 140 MB. Therefore, we have to perform some customization, by selecting a value and modifying it.

💕 Dynamic Group Editor : lotus	
File Edit Help	
Available Criteria	Selected Criteria
Partition	💕 Inventory / Software / Program Title ^= Lotus Notes
🕀 🚔 Index	
🕀 🧰 Name (i.e. Drive Letter)	
🖻 📩 Total size (KB)	
🖻 😋 Free space (KB)	
<b>211394</b>	
<b>eff</b> 831488	
<b>eff</b> 1876888	
<b>2455220</b>	
主 💼 Label 🗨	
	1
Add	Remove

Figure 172. As we are going to customize it, we can choose any value

For example, we clicked **95016 -> Add** in order to put it into the Selected Criteria pane. That brings up the following figure:

💕 Choose Add 🗙
All true (AND)
O Any true (OR)
<u></u> OK

Figure 173. This window appears when we choose to make a query with more than one criteria

The purpose of this window is to ask how you want to implement the second criteria that was chosen. Since we wanted a query that looks for any computer without Lotus Notes installed *and* having at least 140 MB of free space on a hard drive, we checked **All true (AND)**, and clicked **OK**.

If we had chosen **Any true (OR)** the query would have selected all the computers having at least 140 MB of free space and all the computers that didn't have Lotus Notes installed. Queries can become quite complex, so it is always a good idea to think about what you want before creating it. Make sure you test it after creating the query by picking up some selected systems and manually checking if their configuration is in accordance with the query and with what you know about the configuration of the sample systems.

💕 Dynamic Group Editor : lotus	
File Edit Help	
88	
Available Criteria	Selected Criteria
Partition	🖃 🚖 All true (AND)
🗈 💼 Index	💕 Inventory / Software / Program Title ^= Lotus Notes
🕀 💼 Name (i.e. Drive Letter)	🖉 Inventory / Partition / Free space (KB) = 95016
🖻 📩 Total size (KB)	
E free space (KB)	
2211394	
635614	
697810	
<b>1854124</b>	
<b>1876888</b>	
<b>5</b> 030524	
🕀 💼 Label 🗸 🗸	
Add	Remove

Once **OK** has been clicked, the display will look like Figure 174:

Figure 174. A query with multiple criteria

In the Selected Criteria pane, we then customized the information related to the free space on the drive. Using the current settings, Netfinity Director selects systems that have 95016 KB of free space. We are going to tell it we want the systems with 140 MB or more of free space as well. Right-click the line **Inventory** / Partition / Free Space (KB), and choose Greater than or equal to in the contextual menu as shown in the following figure:

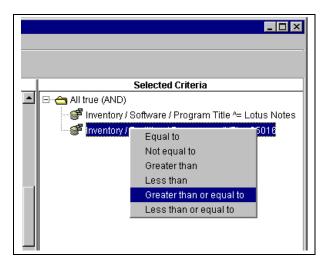


Figure 175. Customizing the criteria related to drive space

Note the sign equal (=) is replaced with the >= sign (greater than or equal to). The we changed the value 95016, and typed 140000 instead. While still keeping Inventory / Partition / Free Space (KB) selected in the Selected Criteria pane, go to the Edit menu, and click **Change Criteria Value**.

رD 🐨	💕 Dynamic Group Editor : lotus				
File	Edit	Help			
	CI	hange Criteria Value			
	Available Criteria				
Ē	🛱 😋 Partition				
	🕀 🧰 Index				
	🕀 💼 Name (i.e. Drive Letter)				
	E Call Size (KB)				

Figure 176. The Change Criteria Value option

This will bring up a dialog box where you can modify the operator and the value it is related to as shown in the following figure:

SUpdate Value	×
Change operator:	Greater than or equal to 💌
Change value:	95016
ок	Cancel Help

Figure 177. The last step to customization

Enter the value 140000 instead of 95016, and click **OK** to confirm the change. That completes the query as shown in Figure 178 and you can now save and test it.

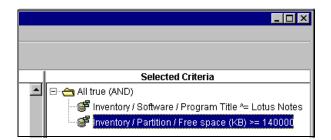


Figure 178. We finished the query

From the File pull-down menu choose Close Group Editor.

رD 🐨	💕 Dynamic Group Editor : New				
File	File Edit Help				
Sa	Save				
Sa	Save As				
CI	ose G	roup Editor	iilable Criteria		
	<b></b> - L	aranerron	•		
Ē	3 🚖 F	Partition			
	🕀 🧰 Index				

Figure 179. About to quit the group editor

The system will ask you if you want to save the query you created. Click Yes.

💕 Grou	p Not Saved 🗙
⚠	This group has not been saved. Do you want to save it now?
	Yes No Cancel

Figure 180. A reminder

The last step is to enter the name of your dynamic group. Since you want to give it a name that relates to its function, enter Candidates for Lotus Notes install.

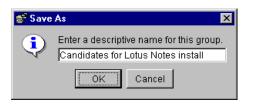


Figure 181. The name of the newly created group

Now it's time to check the computers that appear in this group. From the main console, select the new group you just created. Netfinity Director will perform a query in its database, and it selects all the systems to which the query applies. This means that the server agent will not launch any query on the network. So, if you want the most recent information, you first have to perform an Inventory Collection on the group All Systems and Devices, or on the group that contains the computers you want to investigate.

In our case, only one system meets the criteria of the query: the system JABBATH. Based on that, we will only have to buy one license, instead of making a purchase of 10 licenses. Another implication of this is that you might need to upgrade your hardware to add additional hard drives, if you need to have the code installed on other systems.

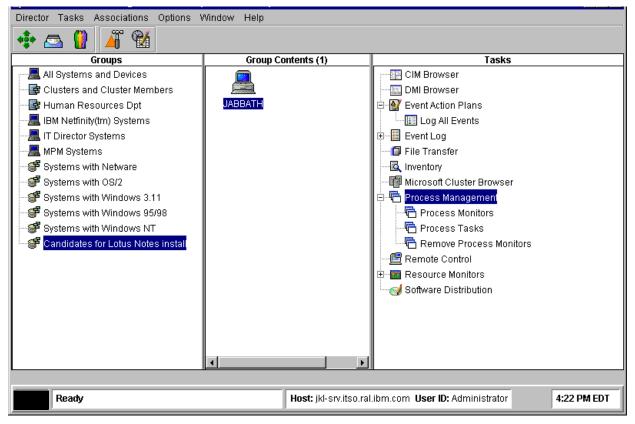


Figure 182. One system meets the criteria of our query

For more details on inventory collection see 3.2.1, "Inventory management" on page 75.

# 3.3.1.4 Task-based groups

The tasks-based groups contain computers that can have one or several tasks in common. For example, you can create a task-based group in which you find the computers that are CIM and DMI-enabled.

# 3.3.2 Planning management tasks with groups

We showed the main Netfinity Director functions in 3.2, "Base functions" on page 74. Most of them also apply to managing groups. Note that, depending upon the type of group (default, static, dynamic or task based), all the tasks may not be available.

Table 6 summarizes these tasks. They are accessible in the contextual menu when you right-click a group.

Table 6.	Management	tasks f	for groups
----------	------------	---------	------------

Task	Definition
Edit	To add or remove some systems in a static group. To modify the conditions of the query in a dynamic group.

Task	Definition
Сору	Not available on default groups (see Copy as static task). It allows you to create a group based on the content of a static group, or on the query of a dynamic group. You must provide a new name for the group you create this way.
Delete	Remove a group from the Groups pane. This does not delete the systems related to this group from the Netfinity Director database.
Rename	Change the name of the group. Not available on default groups.
Copy as static	Take a snapshot of the content of a group, and insert it into a static group. Therefore, this new group will not get updated automatically.
Perform Inventory Collection	Will update the Netfinity Director database by requesting all the computers of the group to send their settings.
Event Log	An event viewer common to all the computers of the group.
View Inventory	Display the result of an inventory, in a multi-column and multi-row view.
CIM Browser	Allows you to browse the CIM properties of several systems at once (in a tree-style view).
Event Action Plans	To create some event action plans for the group, or for some computers in a group.
Set presence check intervals	Determine the common presence check interval value for each computer in the group.
All available recordings	Summarize in a table the recordings that have been programmed for the systems in a group.
All available Thresholds	Summarize in a table the thresholds that have been programmed for the systems in a group.
Resources Monitors	Access to the attributes of the computers in the group.
Distribution Preferences	Allows you to manage several settings related to software distribution for the computers in a group.

We are now going to focus on three elements that are essential for group management: event action plans, resource monitors, and customization of the inventory.

### 3.3.2.1 Event action plans

Event action plans are one of the most important functions of Netfinity Director. These plans describe what type of event the server must listen to regarding the computers or group concerned and what kind of action must be taken regarding the nature of the events.

There are three steps to build an event action plan:

- 1. Build an event filter
- 2. Build an action plan
- 3. Run the action plan for a group or some systems

**Note:** CIM events sent by UM Services appear under the CIM event filter category.

#### Build an event filter

From Netfinity Directors main console, select **Tasks -> Event Action Plan Builder**.

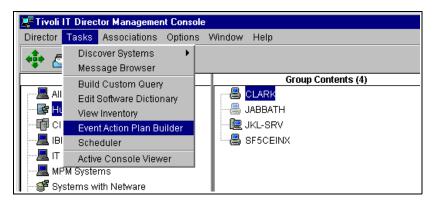


Figure 183. Launching the Event Action Plan Builder

From the Event Action Plan Builder window, select File -> New -> Event Filter.

🕂 Event Action Plan Builder				
File Edit View Hel	lp			
New 🕨 Event A	ction Plan			
Close Event F	ilter			
Event Action	Plans Even	t Filte		
표 🔝 Log All Events	All Events			
	🚽 🐗 Critical Events	6		
	🚽 📬 Fatal Events			
	📕 🛶 Harmless Eve	ents		
	Minor Events			

Figure 184. Accessing the Event Filter window

You should see a window similar to Figure 185.

+ Event Filte	r Builder : New	
File Help		
E/		
Event Type	Severity Day/Time Category Sender Name Extended Attributes	
Any	●-CIM ●-Director ●-MPM Provider for IBM NetFinity ●-Windows NT Event Log	

Figure 185. About to build a new event filter

By default, Netfinity Director defines seven types of event filters:

- All events
- Critical events
- Fatal events
- Harmless events
- Minor events
- Unknown events
- Warning events

The distinction among them is the critical event filter cares only about events that have the *Critical* status flagged, the Fatal Events filter cares only about events that have the *Fatal* status flagged, and so on. The All events filter will forward any event that can occur on the managed system.

**Note:** It is not a good idea to activate the All events filter for a group. You should use it only for specific systems (those you want to monitor), because you can get a lot of events that are not always pertinent to management.

The severity of an alert is defined by the application that generates it.

When you want to build an event filter, you first have to choose what type of event you want to be warned of. You select them in the Event Type tab. You might choose for example, to be warned about any change to the Software Tree of the remote computers registry, or any change in the Windows NT Event Log of a managed NT system. Of course you will not get any alerts if you apply that event filter to a non-Windows system.

If you want to be warned of any change occurring in the Event Viewer of a Windows NT System, in the Event Type tab of the Event Filter Builder window, uncheck the Any box, and highlight the field **Windows NT Event Log**.

Even	t Filter	r Builder : New		
File H	elp			
Ľ				
Event T	ype s	Severity Day/Time	Category	Sender Name E
	ny	<ul> <li>CIM</li> <li>Director</li> <li>MPM Provider</li> <li>Windows NT E</li> <li>Application</li> <li>Security</li> <li>System</li> </ul>	Event Log 🦂	Finity

Figure 186. Select the Windows NT Event Log

Now select the **Severity** tab, and check the **Any** box in order to get all events that will be written in the NT Event Log, regardless of their severity.

• Event Fil	ter Builde	r:New			
File Help					
E/					
Event Type	Severity	Day/Time	Category	y Sender Name	Extended Attributes
💌 Any					
•					
▲				🗹 Fatal	
				🗹 Critical	
				💌 Minor	
				💌 Warning	
				🗹 Harmless	
				🗹 Unknown	

Figure 187. We want to get any event regardless of the severity

Select the **Day/Time** tab. This tab is related to the period of time when you want the filter to be active. For example, if you want to filter only the logon failures that occur on the weekend, choose **Saturday & Sunday** in the Day of the week pop-up menu and use the Starting Time and Ending Time fields to define the range of activity for the filter each day. Click **Add** to set these parameters, as shown in the following figure:

+ Event Filter B	uilder : NT Log	_ 🗆 ×
File Help		
88		
Event Type Sev	verity Day/Time Category Sender Name Extended Attributes	
C Any	Saturday & Sunday 12:00 AM - 12:00 AM EST	
	Delete Add Block queued events	

Figure 188. We can set the period of activity for the filter

If you are using this section as a step-by-step guide, check the **Any** box for demonstration purposes, as in the following figure:

🗧 Event Filter Builder : NT Log			
File Help			
🗎 🛃			
Event Type Se	everity	Day/Time	Category
🔽 Any			
<b>≜</b>			

Figure 189. Most administrators will use the any box

Select the **Category** tab. There are two types of events: Alert and Resolution alerts. The first type is related to a change in the state of a remote system, and the second tells us the change has been resolved (in a perfect world the Netfinity Director event log should contain one resolution entry for each alert).

+ Event Filter	Builder : New		
File Help			
Ľ			
Event Type S	everity Day/Time	Category	Sender Name Exte
Any		_	Aler Resolution

Figure 190. The Category tab

Select the **Sender Name** tab. It is used to define the source (usually, a Netfinity Director server) that forwards to your console the event you want to filter. You can choose to get events generated from a particular node only (a server, an SNMP device, or an MPM device).

► Event Filte	er Builder : New			_ 🗆 ×
File Help				
Ľ				
Event Type	Severity Day/Time	Category Sender Name	Extended Attributes	
☐ Any			23-M2271 23-M2271 JKL-SRV	•
		De	ete Add	

Figure 191. The Sender Name tab

In the current example, leave the Any box checked.

The last tab to work with is the Extended Attributes tab. This tab is used in conjunction with the Event type tab, allowing a greater level of control on this kind of event to filter. Since we already selected to get alerts related to the Event Log, we have several options.

In Figure 186, we had selected only the Windows NT Event Log. If we now select the **Extended Attributes** tab and uncheck the Any box, we have several keywords available to filter the messages related to the Windows NT Event Log of the remote Windows NT systems (see Figure 192).

📭 Event Filter Builder : New	
File Help	
Event Type Severity Day/Time Category Sender Name	Extended Attributes
Delete	Keywords       Type       Source       Category       Event Identifier       Computer       User       Data

Figure 192. The Extended Attributes related to the Windows NT Event Log

For example, if you only want to get from the managed systems the messages coming from the Net Logon service, you have to choose **Source** in the keywords menu, enter NETLOGON in the Values menu, and click **Add** in order to activate the filter criteria. After doing that you should see a window similar to the following:

📫 Event Filter Builder : New	
File Help	
Event Type   Severity   Day/Time   Category   Sender Name	Extended Attributes
Any Source = NETLOGON Delete	Keywords Source Values (String) NETLOGON Add Update

Figure 193. We chose to get only messages related to the NET LOGON service

For this example we left the Any box checked.

Now that we have gone through the different tabs available to select what kind of message we would like to get, we can quit the Event Filter Builder. In the **File** menu, choose **Save As**.

+ Event Filte	r Builder : New			
File Help				
Rename				
Save				
Save As	everity Day/Time	Category Sender Name	Extended Attri	
Close				
, <u> </u>	■ Director			
	MPM Provider for IBM NetFinity			
	Windows NT Event Log			
		111		

Figure 194. About to save our new event filter

A dialog box appears so that you can enter the name of the newly created event filter.

+ - Save	Event Filter		
?	Enter a descriptive event filter name. Win NT Event Log		
	OK Cancel		

Figure 195. We have to enter a name for this event filter

We called it Win NT Event Log and clicked **OK**. The Event Filter Builder window closes and you can check in the Event Filters tab that it was saved by the system (see Figure 196).

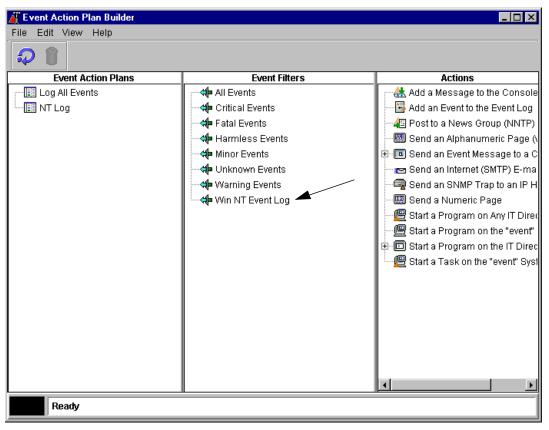


Figure 196. Our filter has been saved

Now that we have defined the type of events that should be monitored by the remote agent, we have to build the action plan.

# Build an action plan

An action plan is made up of one or more event filters, with one or more actions associated with each event filter. To create one, select **File -> New -> Event** Action Plan.

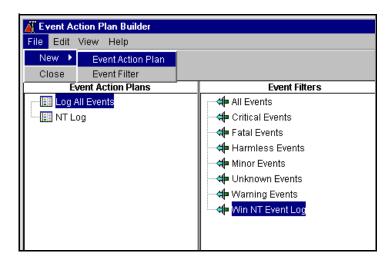


Figure 197. About to create an action plan

A dialog box appears (Figure 198), asking for a name for the action plan. As it is related to the Windows NT Event Log filter, we called it NT Event Log.

🎢 Creat	e Event Action Plan		
?	Enter a descriptive event action plan name. NT Event Log		
	OK Cancel		

Figure 198. Enter the name of the action plan

The NT Event Log action plan should appear in the Event Action Plan in the left-hand pane:

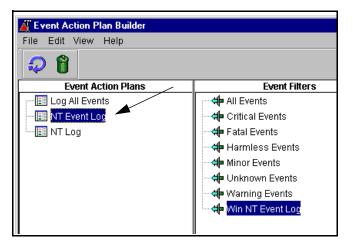


Figure 199. A new action plan has been created

To associate an event filter to this action plan, select it and right-click the **Win NT Event Log** filter in the Event Filters tab as shown in Figure 200. Then select **Add to Event Action Plan** in the contextual menu.

Note that you could have done this association by dragging the **Win NT Event** Log filter on top of the NT Event Log action plan.

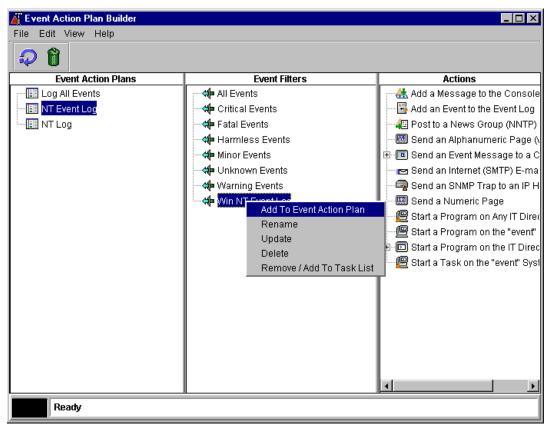


Figure 200. Associating an event filter with an action plan

The filter should appear under the selected action plan as shown in the following figure:

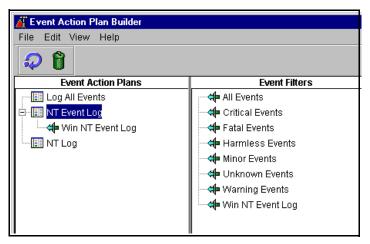


Figure 201. The NT Event Log action plan will use the Windows NT Event Log filter

You can have several event filters associated with one action plan. The remote agent will be configured to look for any of the events you have filtered.

We now have an action plan with an event filter, but we have to decide what the server should do when it gets the alert. Several actions are available with Netfinity Director. They are described in Table 7.

Table 7. The available actions

Action	Description	Parameters	Comments
Add a Message to the console ticker tape	When the event occurs, an informational message will appear and scroll from right to left in the bottom of the Netfinity Director's main console.	Message: the body of the message that will be displayed. User: the ID of the users who will be able to see the message. Multiple IDs should be separated by a comma or a space; an asterisk means anybody.	None
Add an Event to the Event Log	A description of an event will be added to the Netfinity Director event log.	N/A	Should always be used to keep track of what happened on managed systems.
Post to a News Group (NNTP)	An information message will be sent to a news groups, using the NNTP protocol.	News Group: fully qualified name of the destination news group. Reply-to-address: e-mail address of the administrator who has set this action. News host: news server name (for example new.server.com). Port: port number to be used for NNTP protocol (default is 119). Subject: subject of the message. Body of News posting: some text you want to be added with the description of the event.	Messages should be forwarded to intranet news groups only.
Send an Alphanumeric Page (via TAP)	Send a message on a pager. This one must comply with the Telocator Alphanumeric Protocol (TAP).	Serial Port Device Name: the COM port on which the modem is connected. Paging Network's Access Number: the number to dial with the modem (35 digits maximum). Pager ID or PIN: a number (usually 7 digits) identifying the person we want to page. Message to send: the message itself we want the person to be informed of. Modem Initialization string: we can enter here some AT commands to configure the modem.	None

Action	Description	Parameters	Comments
Send an Event Message to a Console User	A pop-up message will appear on the console of a specified user.	Message: the body of the information message we want to send. User: the name of one or several Netfinity Director users we want to be informed of the message. Delivery criteria: we can warn the users while they are logged in, or as soon as they get connected.	Use commas or space to separate several entries in the user field. Use an asterisk (*) to warn anyone who is connected.
Send an Internet (SMTP) E-mail	The description of the event will be sent via e-mail.	Internet e-mail address: the address where we send the mail. Reply-to: the name of the administrator who has set this action.	
		SMTP e-mail server: name of the SMTP server (for example, mail.fr.ibm.com).	
		SMTP Port: usually 25 (port number where the SMTP daemon runs on the e-mail server).	
		Subject of e-mail message: as it says.	
		Body: the message that will be added to the description of the event.	
Send an SNMP Trap to an IP Host	An SNMP trap will be generated.	Destination IP address or hostname: name or IP address of the SNMP manager or gateway.	
		Community: name of the SNMP community.	
Send a Numeric Page	A numeric-only message will be sent to the specified pager.	Serial Port Device Name: the COM port where the modem is connected.	
		Pager Number: the number to dial with the modem.	
		Numerical Message: the numbers that represent the message.	
		Modem Initialization String: a set of AT commands that will override the default string.	

Action	Description	Parameters	Comments
Start a Program on Any IT Director System	As a response to an event, a program will be launched on any system having the Netfinity Director agent installed.	Netfinity Director System Address: network address of the system on which the program will be launched. Rule for addressing is: transport_protocol::address Program Specification:name of the program to launch. Working Directory: if necessary, specify the directory the application will use.	Valid transport protocols are: TCP/IP IPX NetBIOS Examples: TCPIP::9.24.106.130 TCPIP::jkl-srv.raleigh.i bm.com IPX::A1:1234567890 AB NETBIOS::CLARK
Start a Program on the "event" System	A program will be launched on the system where the event has occurred.	Program Specification: name of the program to launch. Working Directory: if necessary, specify the directory the application will use.	None
Start a Program on the IT Director Server	A program will be launched on the Netfinity Director server (the one that gets the event).	Program Specification: name of the program to launch. Working Directory: if necessary, specify the directory the application will use.	None
Start a Task on the "event" System	A Netfinity Director non-interactive task will be performed on the system that has generated the event.	Task: designation of the task to launch. Default tasks are Inventory, Remove Process Monitors, Shutdown Power Down, Restart, Wake-on-LAN.	Every task that had been created with the Process Tasks function will appear here.

All these actions, except Add an Event to the Event Log, must be customized before they can be used with an action plan.

These actions all have a History Mode, which means that each time an action is issued, the result of the action is logged in an event log. You can view the event log for each action by right-clicking the action you customized, and selecting **Action History -> Show**, or you can view all the actions related to an action-type by right-clicking the type of action, and selecting **Action History-> Show**.

You can suspend, then resume if necessary, the recording of an action's log.

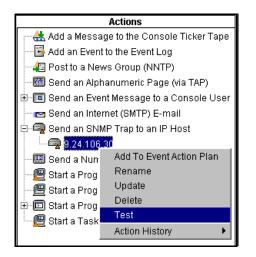


Figure 202. You can test each action your set

In order to personalize the messages, you can use some variables. These variables are described in Table 8. Note that once you have customized an action, you can test it by right-clicking it and selecting **Test** in its contextual menu, as shown in Figure 202.

Table 8. Variables to use for event data substitution

Variable	Meaning
&date	Date when the event occurred
&time	Time when the event occurred
&text	The content of the event
&type	The type of event generated (usually, the service or program that generated it)
&severity	Severity level (critical, fatal, etc.)
&system	Computer that generated event
&sender	Computer that sent the alert
&group	Group of the target system
&category	Alert or Resolution

Since we are going to create an action related to our example (catching all events related to the Windows NT Event log of managed computers), we use some of these variables.

We created the action plan NT Event Log. Now we are going to insert in this action plan the actions that will be generated in case of an event. We chose to write the event into the event log and we want a pop-up message to appear on the console of the Administrator user.

In the Actions pane of the Event Action Plan builder, drag the action **Add an Event to the Event Log** onto the left pane (Event Action Plans), and drop it on the filter **Win NT Event Log** that appears below the NT Event Log action plan.

🔏 Event Action Plan Builder			
File Edit View Help			
<b>\$</b>			
Event Action Plans			
🕒 🔝 Log All Events			
🗄 🔟 NT Event Log			
🗄 🐗 Win NT Event Log			
🔤 Add an Event to the Event Log			
×			

Figure 203. We added an action to the Event Action Plan "NT Event Log"

As shown in Figure 203, the action "Add an Event to the Event Log" has been added under our NT Event Log action plan. Therefore, any relevant event will be written to the Netfinity Director's event log.

We are going to add a second action to our event plan: a pop-up message that will appear on the administrator console. Go to the Actions plan and right-click the **Send an Event Message to a Console User** action, and select **Customize** in the contextual menu as shown in the following figure:

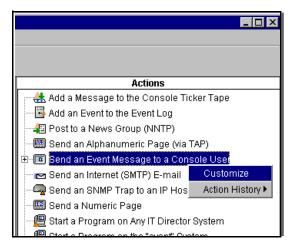


Figure 204. The way to define a pop-up message

A Customize Action window will appear (we could have accessed it by double-clicking the **Send a Message to a Console User** action too).

🧰 Customize Action : Send an Event Message to a Console User 💶 🗙
File Advanced Help
Message
User(s)
(Example: User1, Administrator)
Delivery Criteria
Active Users Only

Figure 205. The Customize Action window

There are three parameters associated with the delivery of a pop-up message:

1. Message

This is a short message that appears on the console of the destination. Since we used variables, we entered the following text:

An &severity event has occurred on system &system.

The &severity variable refers to the status of the event (critical, harmful, unknown, etc.).

The &system variable refers to the name of the system on which the event occurred.

2. User(s)

This contains the names of the Netfinity Director server users you want to be notified when the event occurs. You can enter an asterisk (\*) if you want any user connected to be notified.

For demonstration purposes, enter the name that you used for logging (we chose administrator).

3. Delivery criteria

This field can accept two values: *Active Users Only* means that only the specified users who are logged onto the Netfinity Director server through the console will get the pop-up message. The *At Next Logon* value means that the specified users that are connected will get a pop-up message. Those that are not logged on will be informed of the event at their next connection.

🔟 Customize Action : Send an Event Message to a Console User 💶 🗖 🗙
File Advanced Help
Message
An &severity event has occured on system &system.
User(s)
(Example: User1, Administrator)
administrator
Delivery Criteria
Active Users Only 💌

Figure 206. Parameters for customizing a console message

We have now defined the settings for a pop-up window to be displayed on the console of one user (administrator) as soon as an event occurs on a system (you can refer to Figure 206 to check the parameters).

Choose File -> Close to close the Customize Action window.

🧰 Customize Action : Send an Event Message to a Console User 💶 🗙		
File Advance	d Help	
Rename		
Save		
Save As		
Close		
An &seve	rity event has occured on system &system.	

Figure 207. About to close the Customize Action window

A dialog box will ask you if you want the new parameters to be recorded. Click **Yes**.

🔟 Selea	st an Option	X
?	Save changes before closing?	
	Yes No	

Figure 208. Confirmation dialog box

Enter a description and click OK.



Figure 209. Enter the name of the defined Event Action

Back in the Event Action Plan Builder window we can see a new action appear as a subclass of the "Send an Event Message to a Console User" event type:

,
Actions
Add a Message to the Console Ticker Tape
Add an Event to the Event Log
-49 Post to a News Group (NNTP)
📟 Send an Alphanumeric Page (via TAP)
🚊 🔟 🔟 Send an Event Message to a Console User
🛄 Warning message
📼 🖻 Send an Internet (SMTP) E-mail
🖳 🖳 Start a Program on Any IT Director System
🖳 🕮 Start a Program on the "event" System
🗄 回 Start a Program on the IT Director Server
🖳 🖳 Start a Task on the "event" System

Figure 210. Our customized console message

In order for the event action plan to be complete, we have to assign this Warning Message action to the NT Event Log action plan.

Select the Warning Message action, and drag it over the Win NT Event Log filter that appears in the Event Action Plans pane, under the NT Event Log action plan.

You should see a window similar to Figure 211, with four new elements in the Event Action Plans pane: an action plan called NT Event Log under which we find an event filter called Win NT Event Log. That event filter has two actions associated with it: Add an Event to the Event Log and Warning Message.

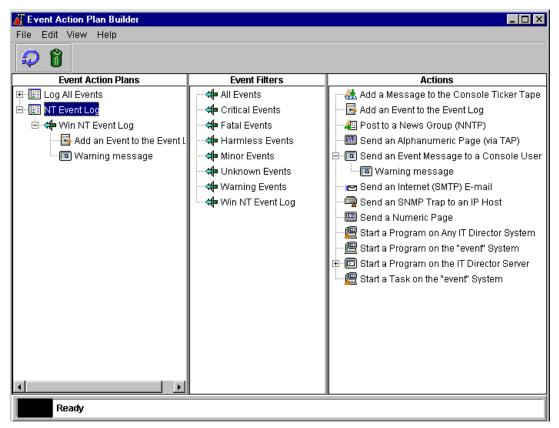


Figure 211. We finished creating the NT Event Log action plan

We can now close the Event Action Plan Builder.

#### Run the action plan on a group or some systems

Now that we have an action plan that writes some information in the Netfinity Director event log and displays a message on the console for any new entry in the NT Event log of a computer running Windows NT, we must run it against a group or some systems.

Since this action plan is related to a feature of Windows NT, it seems quite logical to run it against a group of systems that run that operating system.

From the main Netfinity Director Console select the **Systems with Windows NT** group (Figure 212).

Director Tasks Associations Options V	Vindow Help	
💠 💁 👔 🎢 😭		
Groups	Group Contents (4)	Tasks
All Systems and Devices Human Resources Dpt Clusters and Cluster Members All Netfinity(tm) Systems MPM Systems Systems with Netware Systems with Netware Systems with OS/2 Systems with Windows 3.11 Systems with Windows 95/98 Systems with Windows NT Candidates for Lotus Notes install Candidates for Lotus Notes install Lotus Notes	23-8P4VL 23-M2271 JKL-SRV NTWSDT <23-M2271>	CIM Browser DMI Browser Event Action Plans Event Log File Transfer Kirosoft Cluster Browser Frocess Management Remote Control Remote Control Software Distribution
Ready	Host: jkl-srv.itso.ral.ibm.com Use	r ID: Administrator 1:42 PM EDT

Figure 212. Four Windows NT Systems are licensed by Netfinity Director

Currently, two Windows NT systems are online: 23-M2271 and JKL-SRV.

Right-click, in the Groups pane, the **Systems with Windows NT** group, and choose **Event Action Plans** in the contextual menu. A window similar to Figure 213 will open.

File Edit View Options Help	indows NT	
Groups	Selected Systems	Event Action Plans
Ready	4	

Figure 213. The Event Action Plans related to Windows NT systems window

We can see the computers belonging to the Systems with Windows NT group appear in the middle pane. Two action plans appear in the right pane: Log All Events (created during Netfinity Director installation), and ours, NT Event Log. Drag and drop the NT Event Log action plan over the Windows NT systems that we want to use this plan. Once that is completed these systems will be displayed with the name of the action plan they are using:

💕 Event Action Plans: Systems with W	indows NT	
File Edit View Options Help		
<section-header></section-header>		
Groups	Selected Systems	Event Action Plans
📽 Systems with Windows NT	□       23-8P4VL         □       23-M2271         □       □      <	●-∰ Log All Events ●-∰ NT Event Log
Ready		

Figure 214. The NT Event Log has been applied to two systems

Now, any event occurring on either of these two systems will be reported in the Netfinity Director events log and a message related to this event will appear on the administrator console.

For example, if someone tries to log in to the JKL-SRV desktop, the following message will appear on the administrator console:

<u>æ</u> M	lessage Bro	wser							_ 🗆 ×
File	Message	Help							
Message Information (1)							Event No	tification	
	Message	Title	Date	Time	Status	An Unknown	event ha	s occured	on system
Ever	nt Notificatior	n	8/2/1999	2:00:40 PM	<b>1</b>	JKL-SRV.			
I .									
							Event	Details	
								Clear This I	4000000
								Clear This I	wessage

Figure 215. The pop-up message

If we click Event Details, we get the following information:

📱 Event Notifica	tion - Event Details						
Event Details							
Keywords	Values						
Date	8/2/1999						
Time	2:00:39 PM						
Event Type	Windows NT Event Log.Security.Security.529						
Event Text	Logon Failure: Reason: Unknown user name or bad password						
System Name	JKL-SRV						
Severity	Unknown						
Category	Alert						
Group Name							
Sender Name	JKL-SRV						
Date	Mon Ava 03 14/00/20 EDT 1000						
Date	Mon Aug 02 14:00:38 EDT 1999						
	<u> </u>						

Figure 216. The content of the event message

Right after getting this error message we received another one from the system 23-M2271:

🚐 Message Browser							_ 🗆 🗡
File Message Help							
Message	e Information (		Event Notifi	cation			
Message Title	Date	Time	Status	An Critical	event has	occured	on system
Event Notification	8/2/1999	2:00:40 PM	<b>a</b>	23-M2271.			
Event Notification	8/2/1999	2:07:26 PM	<u> 💏</u>				
						- 1	
					Event Def	tails	
1							
1					С	lear This N	lessage

Figure 217. Another pop-up message

The details of the event were:

📕 Event Notifica	tion - Event Details 📃 🗖 🗙							
Event Details								
Keywords	Values							
Date Time Event Type Event Text System Name Severity Category Group Name Sender Name	8/2/1999 2:14:02 PM Windows NT Event Log.Application.Perfctrs.4005 Load of INETMIB1.DLL failed. Make sure the DLL file is in the PATH. 23-M2271 Critical Alert 23-M2271							
Date	Mon Aug 02 14:14:02 EDT 1999							
•	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·							

Figure 218. A DLL file couldn't be loaded

In parallel to these displays, the event messages were written to the Netfinity Director event log. We can check this from the main console, by right-clicking on the **Systems with Windows NT** group, and selecting *Event Log*.

	View	Options							
*/ 0				Events (69) - Last 24	Hours				
Date	1	Time	Event Type	Event Text	System Na	Severity	Category	Group Nar	
8/2/1999	2:36:	39 PM	Windows		23-M2271	Critical	Alert		
3/2/1999	2:36:	38 PM	Windows	The Open Procedure for se	23-M2271	Critical	Alert		
/2/1999	2:36:	38 PM	Windows	The Open Procedure for se	23-M2271	Critical	Alert		
/2/1999	2:36:	30 PM	Windows		23-M2271	Critical	Alert		
/2/1999	2:36:	25 PM	Windows		23-M2271	Critical	Alert		
/2/1999	2:36:	24 PM	Windows		23-M2271	Critical	Alert		
/2/1999	2:36:	20 PM	Windows		23-M2271	Critical	Alert		
/2/1999	2:36:	19 PM	Windows		23-M2271	Critical	Alert		
/2/1999	2:36:	15 PM	Windows		23-M2271	Critical	Alert		
3/2/1999	2:36:	14 PM	Windows		23-M2271	Critical	Alert		
3/2/1999	2:36:	11 PM	Windows		23-M2271	Critical	Alert		
3/2/1999	2:36:	06 PM	Windows	17148 : SQL Server is term	23-M2271	Harmless	Alert		
1/2/1 000	3.33.	45 PM	Mindowe	The C: dick is at or near ca	23-M2271	Harmlace	Alort		
•								•	
				Event Details					
Keywords		Values	5						
Date		8/2/199	99						
Time		2:36:39	9 PM						
Event Type		Windov	ws NT Event L	g.Application.SQLCTR70.100	1				
Event Text									
System Na	ime 23-M2271								
Severity		Critical							
Category Alert									
Group Nan									
Qondor No	ma	23.M21	71						

Figure 219. System 23-M2271 seems to be in trouble

In Netfinity Director you cannot perform all of the action plans that you set up for some groups, except the "All Systems and Devices" group.

#### 3.3.2.2 Customizing inventory

Inventory is a core function in Netfinity Director, because many tasks use the result of the inventory to work on managed systems (for example, resource monitors or thresholds). Inventory allows you to collect hardware and software information. You can create your own queries, according to your management goals.

Inventory information is stored in Netfinity Director's database (which can be an SQL or DB2 server according to the installation choices you made). Each time a system is discovered by Netfinity Director, it gathers inventory items from the system and stores it in this database. This mean you can see what is installed on a computer, even if it is not currently reachable on the network. This is because the Netfinity Director server will first look for inventory in the database. If you want the most current information you will have to perform an inventory collection, as described in 3.2.1, "Inventory management" on page 75.

#### Accessing and browsing the inventory

There are three ways to access the inventory:

1. If you right-click a computer in Netfinity Director's main console (in the *Group Contents* pane), and choose **View Inventory** in its contextual menu, you will have access only to the information related to this computer. However, any customized query you create will be able to be used with other systems.

	Group Contents (5)
🛛 📇 23-8P4	IVL .
📃 🖳 23-M2	271
🛛 🖳 🖳 JKL-S	20
- 📇 KENN	Open
SF5CE	Delete
	Rename
	Presence Check
	Shutdown
	Restart
	Wake-on-LAN
	Perform Inventory Collection
	Event Log
	View Inventory
	CIM Browser

Figure 220. Accessing the inventory of a stand-alone system

2. If you right-click a group in Netfinity Director's main console (in the Groups pane), and choose **View Inventory** in its contextual menu, you will have access only to the information related to this computer. However, any customized query you create will be able to be used with other systems.

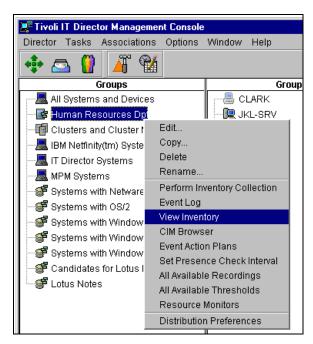


Figure 221. Accessing the inventory of a group

3. If from the menu bar you select **Tasks -> View Inventory**, you access the inventory collection of all the systems known by Netfinity Director. Any query you create here will also be available for groups or systems inventory.

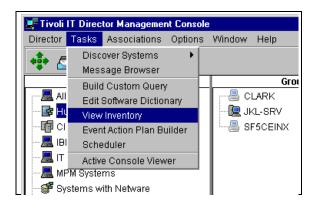


Figure 222. Accessing the inventory of all systems

Any way you access the inventory, the interface will remain the same. Just the number of systems related to the queries will change.

If we launch the inventory for all systems and devices, the Inventory Query Browser window will be displayed, as shown in the following figure:

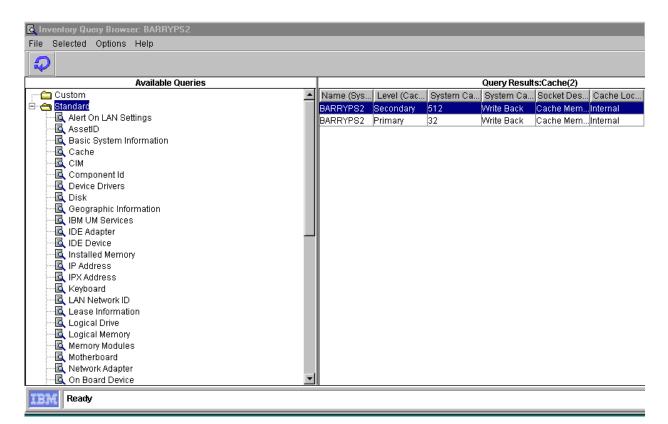


Figure 223. The Inventory window

In the left pane, Available Queries, we have two main folders: The Custom folder contains customized queries (currently, none are defined in Figure 223), and the Standard folder contains a default query provided with Netfinity Director.

The menu bar contains some actions, some of which are available through contextual menus. We will use these actions later in this section.

In the right pane is the name of the system and its attributes.

For example, if we select the item **Basic System Information** in the left pane, we can now see on the right pane some rows with the names of the All Systems and Devices group computers, and each one contains information about the processor, the memory installed, and the operating systems running, as shown in the following figure:

Inventory Query Browser : All Systems and Devices         File       Selected         Options       Help									
Available Queries Query Results:Basic System Information(10)									
Custom 🔺	Name (Sy	Processor family	Current	Physical Mem	Type (Operating	. Versic			
🖻 😋 Standard	SF5CEINX	PENTIUMII	450	130572	WINDOWS 9X	4.0			
Basic System Information	JKL-SRV	PENTIUMII	400	130484	WINDOWS NT	4.0			
Cluster Members	23-8P4VL	PENTIUMII	450	130472	WINDOWS NT	4.0			
Cluster Membership	23-M2271	PENTIUMII	350	196008	WINDOWS NT	4.0			
Component Id	CLARK	PENTIUMII	450	130572	WINDOWS 9X	4.0			
Disk Disk	KENNY	PENTIUMII	450	130572	WINDOWS 9X	4.0			
	JABBATH	PENTIUMII	450	130472	WINDOWS NT	4.0			
Installed Memory	NTWSDT	OTHER	448	130432	WINDOWS NT	4.00			
IP Address	TPIVO2 <2	OTHER	288	196032	082	4.00			
IPX Address	NF5500	PENTIUMII	400	130452	WINDOWS NT	4.0			
Keyboard									
🔤 🖳 Logical Drive									
🔤 🖳 Logical Memory									
🔤 🔤 Memory Modules									
Motherboard									
Network Adapter									
▲	•					►			
Ready									
Reality									

Figure 224. Basic Information for the computers in the All Systems and Devices group

If we want more information about the operating system installed we can highlight the **Operating System** item in the Available Queries pane (Figure 225), and check the build level.

Inventory Query Browser : All Systems and Devices       File       Selected       Options       Help								
Ð								
Available Queries			Query Results:	Operating System(1	0)			
🔤 Network Adapter 🔶	Name (Sys	Ind	Name (Operating System)	Type (Operating	Versio	Primary	Revision (build level.	
	SF5CEINX	1	Windows 95 Operating System	WINDOWS 9X	4.0	TRUE		
Operating System	JKL-SRV	1	Windows NT Operating System	WINDOWS NT	4.0	TRUE	1381 Service Pack 4	
- 🗟 Parallel Port	23-8P4VL	1	Windows NT Operating System	WINDOWS NT	4.0	TRUE	1381 Service Pack 5	
🔤 🖸 Partition	23-M2271	1	Windows NT Operating System	WINDOWS NT	4.0	TRUE	1381 Service Pack 4	
	CLARK	1	Windows 95 Operating System	WINDOWS 9X	4.0	TRUE		
	KENNY	1	Windows 95 Operating System	WINDOWS 9X	4.0	TRUE		
Pointing Device	JABBATH	1	Windows NT Operating System	WINDOWS NT	4.0	TRUE	1381 Service Pack 4	
Printer	NTWSDT <	0	Windows NT Operating System	WINDOWS NT	4.00	TRUE		
Processor	TPIVO2 <23	0	OS/2 Operating System	082	4.00	TRUE		
SCSI Adapter	NF5500	1	Windows NT Operating System	WINDOWS NT	4.0	TRUE	1381 Service Pack 4	
SCSI Device			·					
Software								
System							Т	
System BIOS								
System Location								
System Resource							I	
🔤 System User 🔄								
	•						▶	
Ready								

Figure 225. More information on the operating system

## Create a query

To build our own query, click **Options -> Build Custom Query**.

Inventory Query Browser : All Systems and Devices								
File Selected	Options	Help						
9	Build (	Custom Query						
	Edit S	oftware Dictionary						
🕴 Övailahl		Available Oueries						

Figure 226. To build our own query

A window similar to Figure 227 will then appear:

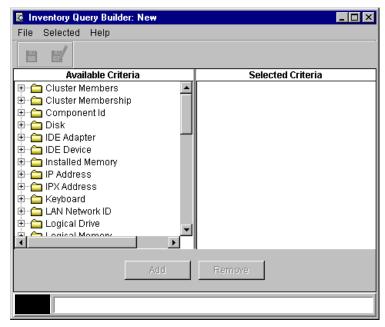


Figure 227. The Inventory Query Builder window

The left pane, Available criteria, lists all the items you can use to build the query. The items you select will appear in the right pane. To add any item, just expand the branches in the Available Criteria pane, select the item you want to use, and click the **Add** button.

For example, if we want a summary related to the TCP/IP configuration for a system, from the Available Criteria list highlight the **IP Address** item. Then, click the **Add** button at the bottom of the Inventory Query Builder window. The items related to the IP configuration will appear in the Selected Criteria pane, as shown in the following figure:

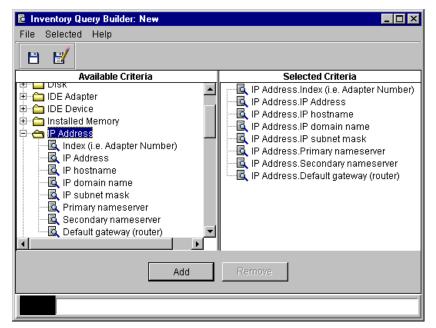


Figure 228. We selected some TCP/IP parameters for our customized query

If there is an item you don't want to use in the Selected Criteria pane, you can just select it, and click **Remove**.

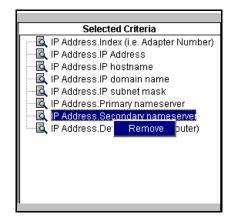


Figure 229. We don't need the IP address of the secondary name server

When you are done select **File -> Close** and a dialog box will ask you if you want to save the query you just built. Answer **Yes**, and you can enter a name for this new query:

🗟 Save	Query
?	Please enter a descriptive query name
	IP Parameters
	OK Cancel

Figure 230. We give our customized query a name

Then click **OK**. The query will then appear in the Custom folder of the Available Queries pane, as shown in Figure 231. If you select it, you will see the main TCP/IP parameters for each computer in the group.

💈 Inventory Query Browser : All Systems and Devices									
File Selected Options	Help								
Available Gueries	Available Query Results: IP Parameters (10)								
📮 😋 Custom 🗸 🔄	Name (Sy	Ind	IP Address	IP hostnam	IP domain na	IP subnet mas	Primary nameserv	. Default gateway	
	SF5CEINX	2	9.24.106.29	hostname		255.255.255.0		9.24.106.1	
🖻 🚖 Standard	SF5CEINX	1	0.0.0.0	hostname		0.0.0.0		9.24.106.1	
Basic System	JKL-SRV	1	9.24.106.130	jkl-srv		255.255.255.0	9.24.106.15	9.24.106.1	
Cluster Memb	23-8P4VL	1	9.24.106.27	23-8p4vl		255.255.255.0	9.24.106.15	9.24.106.1	
Cluster Membr	23-M2271	1	9.24.104.45	23-m2271	itso.ral.ibm.com	255.255.255.0	9.24.104.108	9.24.104.1	
	CLARK	1	9.24.106.25	hostname		255.255.255.0		9.24.106.1	
IDE Adapter	KENNY	2	9.24.106.102	hostname		255.255.255.0		9.24.106.1	
	KENNY	1	0.0.0.0	hostname		0.0.0.0		9.24.106.1	
Installed Mem	JABBATH	1	9.24.106.25	jabbath		255.255.255.0	9.24.106.15	9.24.106.1	
	NF5500	1	9.24.105.202	nf5500		255.255.255.0	9.24.106.15	9.24.105.1	
IPX Address									
🔤 🔍 Keyboard									
🔤 🔤 Logical Drive									
🔤 🔤 Logical Memoi									
🖳 🔍 Memory Modul									
🔤 🔤 Motherboard									
	•							<b>&gt;</b>	
Ready									

Figure 231. The results display of our custom query

We could have mixed any query criteria; we just had to select the item or set of items and add it in the Selected Criteria pane of the Inventory Query Builder window.

Netfinity Director allows you to perform a software inventory, in addition to the hardware inventory.

### Accessing and modifying the software dictionary

The software inventory is available from the Inventory Query window, provided with the Standard query. You have to select the **Software** item in the Available Queries pane, and you will be able to see the programs installed on each system in the group in the Query Results pane. Figure 232 shows us an example of a software inventory on several computers.

2								
Available Queri			G	uery Results:	Software(405	)		
Per Device Physical E		Name (Sys		Install Path	Version ID	Vendor Name (Softwa	Revision (S	
Pointing D		23-M2271	Lotus Notes	C:\notes		Lotus		
Printer	evic	23-M2271	Microsoft Chat	C:\Program	4.71	Microsoft Corp.	4.71.2201.0	
Processo		23-M2271	Norton AntiVirus NT	C:\Program		Symantec		
SCSI Adap		CLARK	ATM Control Panel	C:WINDOWS		Adobe		
SCSI Devi		23-M2271	Microsoft NetMeeting	C:\Program	4.3	Microsoft Corp.	4.3.0.2203	]
Serial Por		23-M2271	Tivoli IT Director	C:\TivoliWg\	2.10	Tivoli Systems	2.10.191.27	1
Software		23-M2271	Microsoft DirectX	C:WINNT\\$	4.0	Microsoft Corp.	4.0.1374.1	1
System		23-M2271	Microsoft Internet Explorer	C:WINNT\\$	4.40	Microsoft Corp.	4.40.1381.1	1
S Seem BI	os	CLARK	IBM PC-DOS	C:\Program		IBM Corp.		1
System Lo	ocati	CLARK	IBM PC-DOS	C:\SRMGR\		IBM Corp.		1
System R		CLARK	IBM PC-DOS	C:\SRMGR\		IBM Corp.		1
🔤 🖾 System U	ser	CLARK	Lotus 1-2-3/Windows	C:\lotus\123		Lotus Development		1
🔤 🔤 Video		CLARK	Microsoft CD Player	C:WINDOWS	4.0	Microsoft Corp.	4.0.0.950	1
🔤 🖳 Windows		CLARK	Microsoft DirectX	C:WINDO	4.5	Microsoft Corp.	4.5.0.155	٦
🔤 🖳 Windows I		CLARK	Microsoft Internet Explorer	C:\Program	5.0	Microsoft Corp.	5.0.2014.200	ĵ
- 🗟 Windows		CLARK	Microsoft Jet V3.5x	C:WINDO	3.50	Microsoft Corp.	3.50.3602.4	1
Windows		CLARK	Microsoft MS-DOS	C:1		Microsoft Corp.		1
		CLARK	Microsoft MS-DOS	C:WINDO		Microsoft Corp.		1

Figure 232. Result of the Software query

To perform this application inventory, Netfinity Director comes with a built-in dictionary. During the Inventory Collection process, it sends the contents of this dictionary to the scanned computer, which compares it with each recorded program.

Each program is identified by a set of information regarding the files that come with it. For example, the presence of the Microsoft Internet Information Server is detected if three files are found on the scanned system (setup.exe, inetmgr.exe, and w3svc.dll). Windows 98 is identified by two files, control.exe and a win.com file whose size must be 24791 bytes.

You can modify the default entries of the software dictionary, and customize it by defining the signature of the applications you want to be able to detect.

For this purpose, you can select from the Inventory Query Browser window, the menu **Options -> Edit Software Dictionary**.

Inventory Query Browser : All Systems and Devices								
File	Selected	Options	Help					
0		Build (	Build Custom Query					
~		Edit S	oftware Dictionary					
A\	vailable Qu	ieries						
		al Enclo		rogram Tit s Notes				

Figure 233. Editing the software dictionary from the inventory query browser window

Or, from the main Netfinity Director's console, select **Tasks -> Edit Software Dictionary**.



Figure 234. Accessing the software dictionary from the main console

You can then access the Inventory Software Dictionary Editor window, as shown in Figure 235:

E Inventory Software Dictionary E	ditor				
File Selected Help					
Available Entries		Er	try Definition		
🕀 🧰 Communications	Entry Description				
🗄 🖆 Computer Assisted Design	Title:	Microsoft Net Wa	itcher		
🗄 🖆 🔂 Database					
🗄 🧰 Default	Vendor:	Microsoft Corp.			
🗄 🧰 Education	Abstract:	Network Monitor	from Microcoff		
🗄 🧰 Financial	Abstract.		110111 101103012		
🗄 🧰 Game	Entry Type:	Networking			~
🗄 🧰 Graphics	Manatan.				
🗄 🖆 🏧 Mail	Version:	I			
🗄 🧰 Multimedia	Revision:				
🖻 😋 Networking					
	Application Keyword	: [			
- 🖶 3270 Workstation PGM	Associated Files				
Direct Cable Connection					
	Filename	Earliest or Exa	Latest Date	Minimum or Ex	Maximum Siz
🗄 🧰 Online Documentation	NETWATCH.EXE				
🗄 🧰 Operating System					
🗄 🧰 Presentation Graphics					
🗄 🧰 Programming					
🗄 🧰 Publishing					
🗄 🖆 🧰 Server					
🗄 🧰 Spreadsheet				,	
🗄 🖆 ն Systems Management	Add		Edit	Ren	nove
🗄 🗠 🧰 Word Processing					
Ready					

Figure 235. The Inventory Software Dictionary Editor window

The entries defined in the dictionary appear in the left pane (called Available Entries), in a tree view, because they are classified according to the type of software they refer to (for example, Database or Games). In the right pane is the characteristics of each entry, and the criteria used as a signature for the software.

For example, Figure 235 shows how Network Watcher is defined. Network Watcher is a tool that is shipped with the Microsoft Windows 9x operating

systems. If the netwatch.exe file is found on a system, then it means the Network Watcher is installed. If multiple files are defined for software, they must reside in the same directory.

We can modify this entry, by highlighting **Microsoft Net Watcher** in the Available Entries pane, and choosing **Selected -> Modify.** You will notice that the Add, Edit and Remove buttons, which were greyed out, turn black and are now usable.

Then, we click the bottom Edit button.

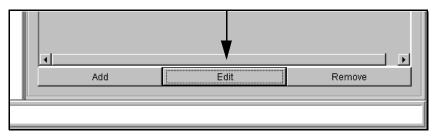


Figure 236. The Edit button allows us to modify a dictionary entry

This will bring up a window that will let you modify the characteristics associated with the netwatch.exe file. If you had an application associated with several files, you would have had to select one of its associated files in order to edit it.

Associated File	Attributes	×							
Filename: NETWATCH.EXE									
File size (optional)									
Exact or Minimum Size (bytes):									
Maximum Size (	Maximum Size (bytes):								
File date last modified (optional)         □ Date is Exact       ☑ Disable Date Attributes         Exact or Earliest Date;       ☑         Latest Date;       ☑									
Use Win32 Version Info for Product Version									
ОК	Cancel	Help							

Figure 237. The netwatch.exe file characteristics

You can now specify several parameters related to the netwatch.exe file. There are two types of parameters: those related to the size of the file, and those related to the date.

**Note:** If you change the name of the file, replacing netwatch.exe with file.exe, and you close the Associated File Attributes window, a new entry will be created, indicating that the Network Watcher program needs two files to be detected (netwatch.exe and file.exe).

For the parameters related to the size, you can specify a minimum or exact size value and another field lets you specify a maximum size. For example, enter the value 62000 in the Exact or Minimum Size field, and the value 65000 in the Maximum Size field. If you just fill in the Minimum or Exact Size field, it must contain the exact size of the file you are looking for. Otherwise, you should fill in the Maximum Size field.

For the parameters related to the date, uncheck the **Disable Date Attributes** box (which means we didn't care about the date of the netwatch.exe file). Then click the calendar icon on the right of the Exact or Earliest Date field. Use the calendar displayed to choose 24/8/96. The Latest Date field is used in conjunction with the Exact or Earliest date field to specify a range of dates that determine if our network.exe file is part of the Microsoft Network Watcher utility.

Check the **Date Is Exact** box (which means you won't specify a range of dates, just a specific one).

	Now,	the .	Associated	File	Attributes	window	should	look	like	the	following	g w	/indow:
--	------	-------	------------	------	------------	--------	--------	------	------	-----	-----------	-----	---------

Associated File Attributes									
Filename: NETWATCH.EXE									
File size (optional)									
Exact or Minimum Size (bytes): 62000									
Maximum Size (bytes): 65000									
File date last modified (optional)         ✓ Date Is Exact       Disable Date Attributes         Exact or Earliest Date:       8/24/1996         Latest Date:       8/24/1996									
Use Win32 Version Info for Product Version									
OK Cancel Help									

Figure 238. We modified the Netwatch.exe attributes

Note that if the Use Win32 Version Info for Product Version box is checked, Netfinity Director will be able to extract version information from the files you specify as signatures for a product. Usually, some version information is stored in these files if the developer has set this option. So, you will not always be able to get something even if this option is checked. Sometimes this can be confusing. When you are looking for a product whose marketing name is Product 2.2, and the associated DLL reports a 4.50.10 Version, you need to be able to match the different fields for the right version number.

Click the **OK** button to close the window. You will return to the Inventory Software Dictionary Editor window.

Now, modify the Title field and complete it for example, with the words for Win9x systems. The entry for Microsoft Network Watcher should look like the following window:

Inventory Software Dictionary E	ditor						-	
File Selected Help								
<i>💫</i> 💾								
Available Entries				Entry Definition				
🗄 🖆 Communications 📃 📥	Entry Description							
🗄 🧰 Computer Assisted Desig	Title:	Microso	ft Net'	Watcher for Win 9	9x syste	ms.		
🕀 🧰 Database					,			_
🗄 🖆 🧰 Default	Vendor:	Microso	ft Corp	0.				
Education	Abstract:	Networ	k Moni	tor from Microsofi	t			
🗄 💼 Financial								
🗄 📩 Game	Entry Type:	Networ	king					
⊕ 🚰 Graphics ⊕ 🚰 Mail	Version:							
E main E main	Revision:							
🚊 😋 Networking								_
	Application Keyw	ord:						
- 🗐 3270 Workstation PGN	-Associated Files-							
	Hoodelateurileo							
	Filename	Earliest or I	Exa	Latest Date	Minimu	Jm or Ex	Maximum Siz	ze
🗄 🖆 🗁 Online Documentation	NETWATCH.E	August 24, 1	996			62,000	65,0	00
🗄 🖆 🗁 Operating System								
🗄 🖆 Presentation Graphics								
🗄 🖆 💼 Programming								
🗄 🖆 🧰 Publishing								
🗄 🗁 Server								
🗄 🖆 💼 Spreadsheet 📃								
🗄 🧰 Systems Management 🖉	Add			Edit		F	?emove	
Ready								

Figure 239. The entry for the Network Watcher program, once modified

Now choose **File -> Close**. A dialog box asks you if you want to save the changes; click **Yes**. The Software Dictionary has now been updated with these changes.

If you perform an inventory collection on a system that has a netwatch.exe file dated after 8/24/1996 and a size from 62000 to 65000 bytes, you will see the following information when clicking **Inventory -> Software**:

🖸 Inventory Query Browser: CLARK								
File Selected Options Help								
Q								
Available Queries		Query Results:So	ftware(35)					
🔤 Pointing Devi 🔺	Name (Sys	Program Title (Software)	Install Path	Version ID	Vendor Na	Revisio		
Printer	CLARK	Microsoft Internet Explorer	C:\Program	5.0	Microsoft C	5.0.201		
Processor	CLARK	Microsoft Internet Explorer	C:\Source\S	4.40	Microsoft C	4.40.13		
	CLARK	Microsoft Jet V3.5x	C:WINDO	3.50	Microsoft C	3.50.36		
Serial Port	CLARK	Microsoft MS-DOS	Cit		Microsoft C			
Software	CLARK	Microsoft MS-DOS	C:WINDO		Microsoft C			
System	CLARK	Microsoft Net Watcher for Win 9x systems.	C:WINDOWS	4.0	Microsoft C	4.0.0.9		
	CLARK	Microsoft ODBC (32-bit)	C:\Source\S	3.0	Microsoft C	3.0.28.:		
	CLARK	Microsoft ODBC (32-bit)	C:WINDO	3.510	Microsoft C	3.510.3		
🔤 🖳 System Reso	CLARK	Microsoft Virtual Machine for Java	C:WINDO	5.0	Microsoft C	5.0.318		
	CLARK	Microsoft Visual C++ Run-Time Library	C:\\$user\52	5.0	Microsoft C	5.0.0.7		
Video 💌	CLARK	Microsoft Visual C++ Run-Time Library	C:\\$user\In	6.0	Microsoft C	6.0.833 💌		
	<u> </u>							
Ready								

Figure 240. Now, the Microsoft Network Watcher program appears as Microsoft Net Watcher for Windows 9x systems

The addition of the software dictionary entries allows you to have a dictionary that is a close match to your software environment.

## Adding entries to the software dictionary

Another way to customize the default dictionary is to add your own entries, related to some software too specific to be published, or to some applications you need to be able to detect.

From the main Netfinity Director console, choose **Tasks -> Edit Software Dictionary**. The default behavior of the Inventory Software Dictionary Editor is to display a new entry that you can customize (if this is not the case, choose **File -> New**, in order to get a display similar to Figure 241).

Inventory Software Dictionary E	ditor		
File Selected Help			
<i>🖓</i> 🕒			
Available Entries		Entry Definition	
E	Entry Description		
🗄 🖆 Computer Assisted Design	Title:	New Entry	
🗄 🖆 🔂 Database			
🗄 🖆 🔤 Default	Vendor:		
🗄 🖆 🛅 Education	Abstract:		
🗄 🖆 🔤 Financial	Abbitatt.		
🗄 🖆 🗁 Game	Entry Type:	Default	▼
🗄 🖆 Graphics	Version:		
⊞ ∰ Mail	version.		
🗄 🗠 🎰 Multimedia	Revision:		
E for the second secon	Application Kouward		
🗄 🖆 Online Documentation	Application Keyword	•	
⊕ _ 🏠 Operating System	Associated Files		
🗄 🖆 Programming	Filename E	arliest or Exa 📃 Latest Date	Minimum or Ex Max
E Publishing			
⊞ ≦a Server			
⊞ ≦ Spreadsheet			
🗄 🖆 Systems Management			
⊡… 🚖 Word Processing			
	Add	Edit	Remove
			<b></b>
Ready			

Figure 241. Ready to enter a new entry in the software dictionary

You must first fill in several fields before indicating to Netfinity Director the specific files that indicate the presence of the application. These fields are used for administration convenience. They are not used to detect if an application is installed or not.

For example, maybe you want Netfinity Directory to be able to detect Adobe Acrobat Reader 4.0. We know this software isn't recorded in the dictionary since it wasn't detected on some systems where this application was installed. It is OK to perform a check by using the **File -> Find** function of the Dictionary Editor.

The Find function will browse all the entries in the dictionary, looking in the Title field of each entry. If a title is found and this is not the one you are looking for, click **Find Next** to find another entry. Once the end of the dictionary is reached, the search will automatically go to the first entry to keep on looking for matching entries.

🎻 Find Software Defini	tion	×
Search For: acrobat		•
<ul> <li>Match case</li> <li>Match any part</li> </ul>		
	Find next Ca	ncel

Figure 242. The Software Dictionary Editor find function

There are several entries for Acrobat Reader, related to Version 1.0 and 3.0, but none for Version 4.0. Version 3.0 is detected when a file AcroRd32.exe exists, with a size of 2,263,552 bytes. Version 1.0 is detected when a file Acroread.exe with a size of 730,832 bytes exists.

As criteria for Acrobat Reader 4.0, we used the name of the main executable file, AcroRd32.exe, and its size, 2,315,264 bytes.

Fill in the New Entry window, in order to make it look like Figure 243:

Entry Definition						
Entry Description		-				
Title:	Adobe Acrobat Reader					
Vendor:	Adobe Systems	Adobe Systems				
Abstract:	PDF files reader					
Entry Type:	Word Processing					
Version:	4.0					
Revision:						
Application Keyword:						
Associated Files						
Filename Ea	rliest or Exa Latest Date Minimum or Ex Max					
Add	Edit Remove					
		<u> </u>				

Figure 243. Defining an entry for Adobe Acrobat Reader 4.0

The Entry Type field is a pull-down menu where you choose which category of software the program you are defining belongs to. If nothing is entered, the string "Default" will be inserted by the Dictionary Editor. All fields in the Entry Description pane are used only for display purposes.

Then click the **Add** button to specify which files determine the presence of Acrobat Reader 4.0. You are given two choices: Enter File Information Manually, and Select File From List:

Associated File Attributes						
C Enter File Information Manually						
Select File From List						
ОК	Cancel					

Figure 244. Two ways to specify associated files

The first choice will bring you to a window similar to Figure 238, but with blank fields. This gives you the opportunity to specify a range for the size and date attributes. The second choice lets you choose using a file browser window which files are to be associated with the program. Each time you choose a file with this option, the program automatically picks up the exact date and size attributes so you don't have to enter them manually.

Since we wanted to enter some exact attributes, check **Select File From List**, and click **OK**. The file browser window should appear:

Associated File Attributes		×
File Name	Directories:	OK Cancel
AUTOEXEC.BAT boot.ini CONFIG.SYS f043435.id GZIP.EXE GZIP386.EXE ibmfanw.log	<ul> <li>C1</li> <li>Actrobat3</li> <li>LOGS</li> <li>Iotus</li> <li>Multimedia Files</li> <li>notes</li> </ul>	
List Files of Type	Drives:	Source:
Ready		

Figure 245. The file browser window

In this case, the AcroRd32.exe file was located in the Acrobat Reader 4.0 default installation directory:

Associated File Attributes	:	X
File Name	Directories:	ок
AcroRd32.exe	C:\Program Files\Adobe\Acrobat 4.0\Rea	ader Cancel
(c)Adobe.bd Acrofx32.dll AcroJs32.dll	C:1 Program Files	
AcroRd32.exe Admui316.fon Agm.dll Cooltype.dll	Acrobat 4.0  Reader  ActiveX  browser  C Optional	
List Files of Type	Drives:	Source:
Ready		

Figure 246. We located the .exe file to associate with Acrobat Reader 4.0

Click the **OK** button on the right. Then you will see in the Associated pane of the New Entry window with the AcroRd32.exe file with its size and date attributes:

Entry Definition						
Entry Description	Entry Description					
Title:	Adobe Acroba	Adobe Acrobat Reader				
Vendor:	Adobe System	ns				
Abstract:	.PDF files rea	der				
Entry Type:	Word Proces	sing		<b>~</b>		
Version:	4.0					
Revision:						
Application Keyw	ord:					
Associated Files						
Filename	Earliest or Exa	Latest Date	Minimum or Ex	Maximum Size		
AcroRd32.exe	March 4, 1999		2,315,264			
Add		Edit	R	emove		

Figure 247. The information related to the AcroRd32.exe files

You can add, for each new software entry, as many associated files as you want, but they *must* reside in the same directory.

In order to update the dictionary with this new entry, click the floppy drive icon in the tool bar, then choose **File -> Close**.

Now, you can perform an inventory collection (the process is described in 3.2.1, "Inventory management" on page 75) to update the Netfinity Director database with the names of the systems that have Acrobat Reader 4.0 installed.

#### Exporting some query results

The base Netfinity Director program allows you to export the results of a query. This export function is accessible from the **File -> Export menu**:

🗟 Inventory Query Browser : All Systems and Devices						
File Selected Options Help						
Refresh						
Export 🕨 Spreadsheet (.CS	3V)					
Close HTML (.HTM)				Its:Operating System(		
	rvarhe (Sys	Ind	Name (Operating Syste	Type (Operating Sys	Version (	Revision (build level,
	NF5500	1	Windows NT Operating	WINDOWS NT	4.0	1381 Service Pack 4
Memory	23-8P4VL	1	Windows NT Operating	WINDOWS NT	4.0	1381 Service Pack 5
Operating System	23-FF426	1	Windows NT Operating		4.0	1381 Service Pack 4
System User	SF5CEINX	1	Windows 95 Operating		4.0	
Standard	CLARK	1	Windows 95 Operating		4.0	
Basic System Inform	JABBATH	1	Windows NT Operating		4.0	1381 Service Pack 4
Cluster Members	JKL-SRV	1	Windows NT Operating	WINDOWS NT	4.0	1381 Service Pack 4
- 🖸 Cluster Membership						
Component Id						
🔤 IDE Adapter						
IDE Device						
🔤 🔤 Installed Memory						
IP Address						
Ready						
P						

Figure 248. Data exporting

Two formats are available: the Comma Separated Values (CSV) format and HTML. Either one will prompt you to enter a filename:

Format	×
Directories:	ок
	Cancel
Drives:	Destination:
	Local V
	D1 D1 D1 D1 D1 D1 D1 D1 D1 D3 D3 D3 D3 D3 D3 D3 D3 D3 D3

Figure 249. Saving data in .CSV file format

You get a message if the export has completed successfully.

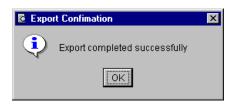


Figure 250. The confirmation message

Exporting data can be very useful, because you can then manipulate the information in a spreadsheet or a database program.

## Reading a .CSV file in Lotus 1-2-3 (Release 9)

In Lotus 1-2-3, select the **File -> Open** pull-down menu.The Open dialog box will appear. In the **Files of type** field, select **Text (TXT,PRN,CSV,DAT,OUT,ASC)**. Select the file you wish to import (Figure 251), and click **Open**.

Open		×
Look jn:	殿 (D:) 💌 🖻	📥 📰
🗎 lotus	🚞 Smslogon	
🚞 Mssql7	🧰 Softs	
📄 notes	iemp	
📄 notes sql	opsys.csv	
Recycler		
🔲 Roadrunn	er	
, File <u>n</u> ame:	opsys.csv	<u>O</u> pen
Files of <u>type</u> :	Text (TXT;PRN;CSV;DAT;OUT;ASC)	Cancel
Description:		<u>H</u> elp
🗖 Open as r	ead only	Lotus Notes
	vith current workbook.	Int <u>e</u> rnet

Figure 251. Select the file type

A new window will appear, with several import options. Check **Parse as CSV file** (Figure 252), then click **OK**.

Text File Options	×
Parsing options	
○ Start a new column at each Tab	
Parse as CS⊻ (comma separated value) file	Cancel
○ Automatically parse based on file layout	
C Put everything in one column	<u>H</u> elp
Character set: Windows	

Figure 252. Select the CSV import option

The spreadsheet program will then read the selected .CSV file, and import it in a new sheet in a display similar to Figure 253.

👰 Lo	tus SmartSuit	e - 1-2-3-	Untitled.123]				
🔛 Ei	le <u>E</u> dit <u>V</u> iew	<u>C</u> reate <u>R</u> anj	ge <u>S</u> heet <u>W</u> indow <u>H</u>	elp			
	A:B31	B	<u>,</u> 6				
10	🖻 造 🚨	📴 之 🖌	k 🖪 🔊 🖌 🛀	📄 🔏 🛟	+2 3	lı 🌏 🔯 🕯	
A	A	В	С	D	E	F	G
1	Name (Syst		Name (Operating Sy			Revision (bu	uild level, se
2	NF5500	1	Windows NT Opera:	WINDOWS	4.0	1381 Service	e Pack 4
3	23-8P4VL	1	Windows NT Opera	WINDOWS	4.0	1381 Service	e Pack 5
4	23-FF426	1	Windows NT Opera	WINDOWS	4.0	1381 Service	e Pack 4
5	SF5CEINX	1	Windows 95 Operati	WINDOWS	4.0		
6	CLARK	1	Windows 95 Operati	WINDOWS	4.0		
7	JABBATH	1	Windows NT Opera	WINDOWS	4.0	1381 Service	e Pack 4
8	JKL-SRV	1	Windows NT Opera	WINDOWS	4.0	1381 Service	e Pack 4

Figure 253. The result of the import in Lotus 1-2-3

#### Reading a CSV file with Lotus Approach

In Lotus Approach, choose **File -> Open...** The Open dialog box will appear. In the Files of type field, choose **Text - Delimited (\*.TXT)**. In the File Name field, enter \*.csv, then click the **Open** button in order to enable a filter for CSV files. Browse through your folders to find the .CSV file you wish to import (Figure 254). Once you find it click **Open**.

Open				×
Look jn:	殿 (D:)		- 🗈	<b>*</b>
📄 lotus	🚞 Smslogon			
Mssql7	🔜 Softs 🧰 temp			
inotes sql				
🚞 Recycler				
📄 Roadrunne	er			
File <u>n</u> ame:	opsys.csv			<u>O</u> pen
Files of type:	Text - Delimited (*.TXT)		-	Cancel
Descri <u>p</u> tion:	8/11/9 12:25:25 AM	739 bytes		Help
				Set <u>up</u>
				<u>C</u> onnect
				Disconnect
🔲 Open as <u>r</u> e	ad-only			Int <u>e</u> rnet

Figure 254. Select a file type and a file name

Then, a Text File Options window will pop up. Check the **Commas** option in the Separate fields with list, check the **First row contains field names** option at the bottom, and check the **Windows** field in the Character set pane. Then click **OK** (Figure 255).

Text File Options	×
Separate fields with	ок
<u>Commas</u>	
C Semicolons	Cancel
O Sp <u>a</u> ces	Help
⊙ <u>I</u> abs	
○ <u>0</u> ther:	
Character set	
© DOS or OS/2 (PC-8)	
Eirst row contains field	names

Figure 255. Options in order to import the CSV file

Finally, you have to specify another filename, which will be the destination file. Lotus Approach will read the data in the .CSV file and after converting it, it will save it in the file you specify. The default file type is dBase IV file format, but you can specify other file types.

Select a file name and a file type as the destination, then click **Create** (Figure 256).

New		×
Create jn:	👦 (D:) 💽 主	<u>*</u>
📄 lotus	🥅 Smslogon	
🔲 Mssql7	Difts Softs	
📃 notes	🔲 temp	
📃 notes sql	opsys.dbf	
Recycler		
📃 Roadrunn	er	
1		
File <u>n</u> ame:	opsys.dbf	C <u>r</u> eate
Create <u>t</u> ype:	dBASE IV (*.DBF)	Cancel
Description:	Select a file to open, or enter a new name.	
Desen <u>p</u> tion.	Select a file to open, or enter a new hame.	<u>H</u> elp
		Set <u>u</u> p
		<u>C</u> onnect
		Disconnect

Figure 256. A destination file name and type is needed

Lotus Approach will import and display the first entry of the .CSV file. An example is shown in Figure 257.

💁 File Edit Viev				
		Form 1		
Name (System) NF5500	1	Name (Operating System) Windows NT Operating Syste	Type (Operating System) WINDOWS NT	Version (Operating System 4.0
Revision (build 1381 Service				
💽 Record 1	🔁 Found 7 of 7	Browse	<sup>^</sup> Form 1	A

Figure 257. A .CSV file has been imported into Lotus Approach

For each Name (System) field that was found in the .CSV file, Lotus Approach will display the information about it. Figure 257 shows, for the system NF5500, some operating system information. If you look at the bottom of the window, you can see that Approach has correctly found the seven entries for the .CSV file, and converted them into records.

From this, you can see that you can use the features of a powerful database or spreadsheet software to manage your inventory.

# **Chapter 4. Netfinity Director tools**

Netfinity Directors Universal Manageability Services (UM Services) makes the manageability of PCs (desktop, mobiles, and servers) possible and reduces your total cost of ownership (TCO).

UM Desktop Extensions is an addition to the UM Services package to further reduce your TCO on desktops and mobiles and make management even easier. To use these tools, you have to connect to UM Services systems that have the UM Desktop Extensions. This connection can be done with a Web browser. The tools that you can access are:

- CMOS Configurator
- ConfigSafe
- CoSession Remote Control/CoSession Remote 32
- EZ Admin
- PC-Doctor

Also, IBM delivers some tools that make the management of IBM Netfinity Servers easier. The tools in these packages can be divided into two groups: Life Cycle Tools (LCTs) and other tools.

In this chapter we describe and show the tools that are accessible from within Netfinity Director. Also, other Life Cycle Tools will be mentioned, to give an overview of the entire collection of tools that IBM provides. To get more information on UM Services see *Universal Manageability: Enterprise Management Integration,* SG24-5388.

A sample of the Netfinity Director Tasks pane with the Life Cycle Tools added is shown in Figure 258:

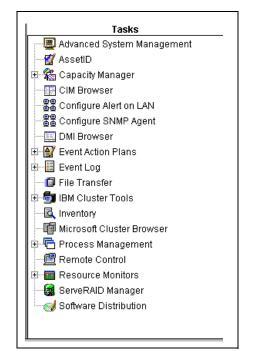


Figure 258. Netfinity Director with LCTs installed

# 4.1 Installation of Life Cycle Tools

The following installation flow assumes that you have already installed the base Netfinity Director product. We ran setup.exe to begin the installation:



Figure 259. The initial Server Extensions

Click **Next** and click **Next** again on the window that follows it. You then get a list of all of the tools that will be installed on your system. In our case we had:

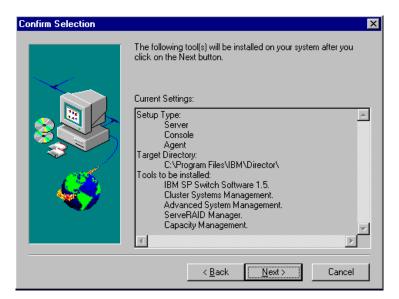


Figure 260. Server tools to be installed

If you had the Netfinity Director task running you will be prompted to shut it down. This does not refer just to the console interface, but the Netfinity Director Server.

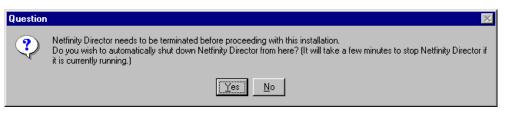


Figure 261. Shut down Netfinity Director before integrating Life Cycle Tools

The installation process informs you of its progress as it installs the various tools:



Figure 262. Tool installations

Once the UM Server Extensions are all integrated and installed, click OK.

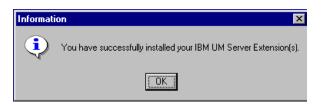


Figure 263. Installation complete

Your start menu gets updated with the new tools:



Figure 264. Start menu updates

If you only installed a subset the first time or if additional tools become available, you can click **Install IBM UM Server Extensions** to add new tools:



Figure 265. Reinstall or add new tools

The process is very similar to the base installation.

One slight difference is that you are prompted for the source directory where the code is located. We modified it from the default location to the location we had placed our copy of the tools:

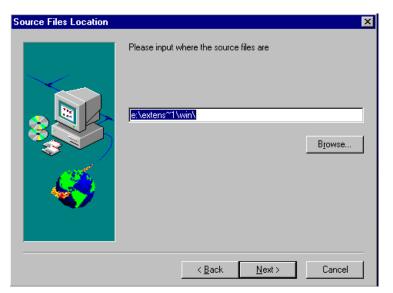


Figure 266. Tools source

Select one, or all of the tools to be installed and then click Next.

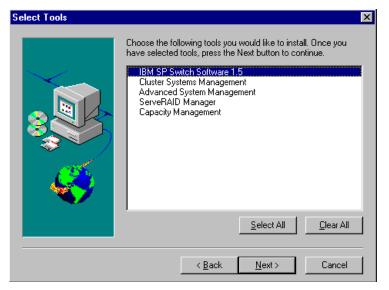


Figure 267. Select tools

We selected all of the tools. In this case it actually reinstalled some of the tools that we had installed on the first installation. This did not appear to cause any problems.

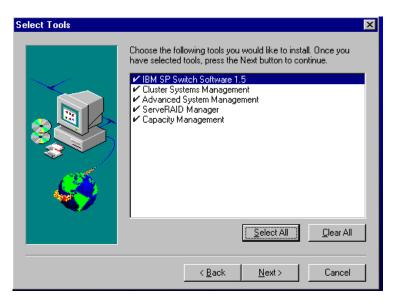


Figure 268. Select all

The installation process informs you what it is going to do. The rest of the installation process is the same as it was before.

The first time you restart the console you should notice on the bottom of the console the words, Updating tasks. Those are the extensions being added to the console.

BIBM Netfinity Director Console Director Tasks Associations Options Window	Hein	
	тыр	
Groups	Group Contents (0)	Tasks
All Systems and Devices		
📲 Clusters and Cluster Members		
🐨 💕 Systems with Alert on LAN		
🐨 💕 Systems with AssetID		
🖅 💕 Systems with CIM		
🐨 💕 Systems with Netware		
🐨 🌮 Systems with OS/2		
🖅 Systems with SNMP Agent		
💕 Systems with Windows 95/98		
🖉 Systems with Windows NT		
	I	
	Uset have 2 ibuse 2 ibuse and U	
Updating tasks	Host: barryps2.ibmus2.ibm.com U	ser ID: barry 9:40 AM EST

Figure 269. Extensions added

## 4.1.1 Extensions

The Tasks list now includes Life Cycle Tools. You can use the same drag and drop process to access these functions as you do for the base Netfinity Director functions.

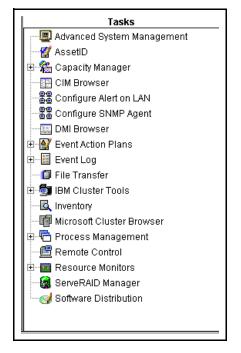


Figure 270. New task list

If you drop and drag the Advanced System Management onto a server you should see the following pop-up window. This shows you the functions that you can now perform using Netfinity Director:

Advanced System Management - : BARRYPS2
Options Help
Operational Parameters
Configuration Information
Configuration Settings
Event Log
System Power Control
Remote POST Console

Figure 271. Advanced System Management

You can also drag and drop the AssetID task onto your server and you should see the Asset ID information in a pop-up window:

File Help		<u> </u>
Serialization   Syste	em   User   Lease   Asset   Pe	rsonalization   Warranty   _
Name	Serial Number	Information
Processor 0	11S01K2053ZJ15MK88704V	Intel Pentium II 350
Hard Drive 0	DDRS-34560WRDFA0039	IBM-PCCO DDRS-34560W !#
Memory Socket 0	0730209831300014B7	256 MB
Power Supply 0	J15D1489PE4	
System	23M1809	IBM 847621U Netfinity 3000
Motherboard	11S20L0939ZJ16BH52953A	IBM 847621U
		<b>_</b> _

Figure 272. Asset information - many tabs of information

Dropping Capacity Manager onto a system that supports this agent provides the capacity management function. You can track performance and produce some graphical data to see how a system is doing:

🚰 Monitor Activator				
	Sys	stems		
Director Agent	Selected Monitors BARRYPS2			
E G DMI Monitors				
E Memory Monitors				
🗉 🗗 NT Performance Monitors				
🗄 🗁 Process Monitors				
E Sentry Monitors				
È ← TCP/IP Monitors				
	J			
	Le	gend		
	Monitors	Systems		
	△ Active on all systems where present	🔁 Monitor is active on system		
	□ Inactive on all systems where present	🔁 Monitor is inactive on system		
	🕰 Active on some systems where present 🛛 🗟 Monitor is not present on system			
	🗠 Pending active on systems where present	🔔 Capacity Manager agent is not running on sys		
	🛛 🗠 Pending inactive on systems where preser	💿 System is busy		
	Bold text indicates Performance Analysis m	🚰 System is secure		
		System is offline		
		? System status is unknown		
O <u>m</u> Off	<b>▲</b>			
	Apply Cancel Help			
IBM Ready				

Figure 273. Capacity management

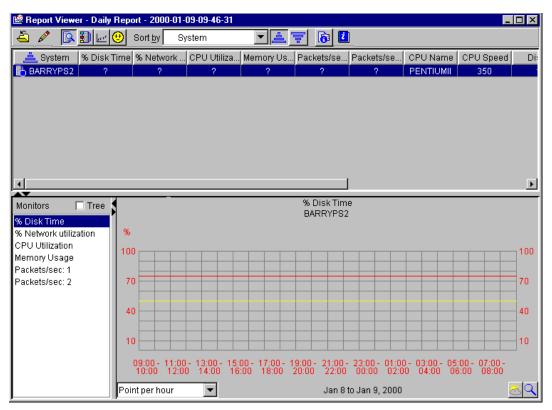


Figure 274. Sample daily report

Following is a list of the reports you can run:

🕍 Report '	Viewer - Daily I	Report - 200
🚢 🖉	💽 🛐 🗠 🤇	🕑 Sort <u>b</u> y
<u>O</u> pen lo	ocal report	Ctrl+O
<u>M</u> erge v	vith local report	
<u>S</u> ave as	s local report	Ctrl+S
Export r	eport to local <u>H</u>	TML
Export g	graph to local G	IF
O <u>p</u> en re	emote report	Alt+O
M <u>e</u> rge v	vith remote rep	ort
S <u>a</u> ve as	s remote report	Alt+S
Export r	eport to remote	HTML
Export g	graph to remote	GIF
New W	indow	
Exit		Ctrl+X

Figure 275. Capacity management reports

If you expand the list of tasks in the Netfinity Director Console you should see the following UM Services Extensions as well as the base functions:

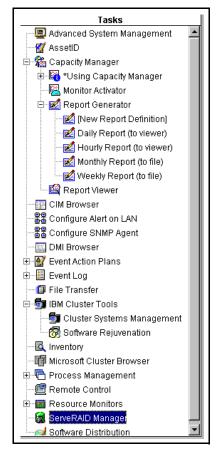


Figure 276. All the tasks

# 4.2 Life Cycle Tools

All of the LCTs installed with the UM Server Extensions are made up of three parts, just like Netfinity Director:

- Server
- Console
- Agent

You must have installed the LCT on all three subsystems, to use an LCT.

IBM LCTs consist of the following:

- CrossBrand LCTs
  - Alert on LAN / Alert on LAN 2
  - IBM System Migration Assistant (SMA)
  - LANClient Control Manager (LCCM)
  - SMART Reaction
- Server LCTs
  - Advanced System Manager
  - Capacity Manager

- Cluster Manager
- ServeRAID Manager
- Update Connector Manager

You might not be able to use all of the LCTs on all of your systems, as some of the tools depend on the technology that is built into the particular client.

Note: None of the UM Desktop Extensions currently install into Netfinity Director.

#### 4.2.1 Advanced System Manager

With the Advanced System Management LCT you can connect to the advanced system management processors or adapters, which are installed on your Netfinity server. These adapters/processors are known as Advanced Systems Management (ASM) devices.

The ASM device makes it possible to manage, monitor, and diagnose a Netfinity server, even if it is powered down. With the Advanced System Management LCT you can configure the ASM device either by LAN or a dial-out connection.

Advanced system management adapters or processors are capable of generating events for operating system and operating system-loader time-outs, POST, voltage and temperature, and so on. These events can be sent over the LAN or a dial-out connection.

For more detailed information about the setup of the ASM devices, see *Netfinity Server Management*, SG24-5208, available from <a href="http://www.redbooks.ibm.com/abstracts/sg245208.html">http://www.redbooks.ibm.com/abstracts/sg245208.html</a>.

If you are connected to the system with the ASM device via the LAN, you can drag and drop the task on the server to be managed. If you want to connect to your system using the serial connection or a system that does not show up in Netfinity Director, you can right-click the task and select **Open** or you can launch the GUI from the command prompt - asmgui.exe. This GUI is installed in <installation-drive>:\IBM\Director\bin.

Advanced System Management - : NF5500	- 🗆 ×
Options Help	
Operational Parameters	
Configuration Information	
🖉 Event Log	
System Power Control	
Remote POST Console	
Connected to DominoR	

Figure 277. The Advanced System Manager Life Cycle Tool

The software requirements for this LCT are:

- Console: Windows NT 4.0, Windows 95, or Windows 98
- Server: Windows NT 4.0
- Agent: Windows NT 4.0

Also, the following event types are added to the Event Filter:

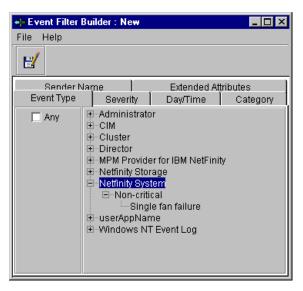


Figure 278. Event filters for ASM device

#### 4.2.1.1 The options

You can perform different tasks from within the menus of the Advanced System Management window. The following figure gives you an overview of the different menus and their submenus:

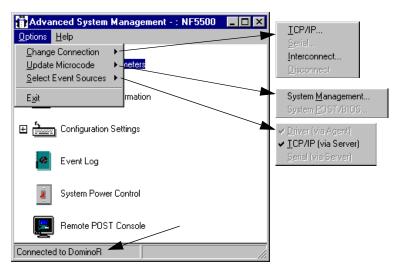


Figure 279. The menus within the Advanced System Management LCT

Change Connection

With these submenus, you can set up predefined connections including user ID and password (this is the replacement for Netfinity Manager's Dynamic

Connection Manager or Serial Connection Manager). You can always see which ASM device you are connected to by looking at the name at the bottom of the window.

Connections to other ASM devices can be done in one of the following ways, depending on your setup:

Serial connection

You dial out from your managing machine into the ASM device.

Interconnect

When you have made your first connection to an ASM device, you can connect to other ASM devices. This is true if they are connected via the RS-485 ASM interconnect bus port.

• TCP/IP

If you have a connection to the ASM device either via Ethernet or the optional Netfinity Advanced System Management token-ring option.

• Update Microcode

This menu enables you to update the system's BIOS and the ASM device firmware.

Select Event Sources

This menu item is for receiving alerts. An ASM device can send alerts through the device driver, Netfinity TCP/IP, or serial.

Both Netfinity Manager and Netfinity Director can receive TCP/IP alerts. If you have both Netfinity Manager and Netfinity Director installed on your system, only one of them is able to receive the alerts. This means that if you want TCP/IP alerts to be received in Netfinity Manager, you would disable the TCP/IP event source in Netfinity Director. But if you want the TCP/IP alerts to be received in Netfinity Director, you would have to disable Netfinity Manager's TCP/IP protocol.

If you select **g**, TCP/IP alerts can be received in Netfinity Manager and forwarded by the MPM to Netfinity Director.

#### 4.2.1.2 Operational parameters

To get information about the condition of the server, you can look into Operational Parameters. This consists of three parts:

- 1. Temperatures
- 2. Voltages
- 3. System Status

None of the information in these windows can be changed; the amount of information you get depends on the server model.

The temperature window gives you detailed information on the current temperature of basic components in the system. Also, you can see the predefined thresholds that are set for each component

- Value: This is the current temperature of the component.
- Warning Reset: If there has been a temperature warning, the warning will be reset when the temperature goes under this value again.

- Warning: If the temperature exceeds this value, a warning will be sent.
- Soft Shutdown: If the temperature reaches this value, the system will attempt to shut down the system by shutting down the operating system first.
- Hard Shutdown: If the temperature is equal to this value, the system will power off, without any further warning. This is done to protect the system components.

		Temperatures (c	legrees Cels	ius)	
Location	Value	Warning Reset	Warning	Soft Shutdown	Hard Shutdown
Center card	25.00	39.00	47.00	52.00	57.00
CPU #1	27.00	42.00	47.00	53.00	58.00
CPU #2	25.00	41.00	50.00	57.00	62.00
Disk backplane	21.00	37.00	42.00	45.00	50.00
र हर					

Figure 280. Operational parameters - Temperatures

The Voltages window gives information about voltages from the power supply. As in the Temperatures window, you can see current values and predefined thresholds. In this window you can see both the upper and lower thresholds.

U Voltages			Voltages			
Source	Value	Warning Reset	Warning	Soft Shutdown	Hard Shutdown	
+5 Volt	5.10	( 4.90, 5.25)	[ 4.70, 5.60]	( 4.60, 6.50)	( 4.50, 6.50)	
+3 Volt	3.32	( 3.26, 3.43)	( 3.10, 3.80)	( 3.03, NONE)	[ 2.97, NONE]	
+12 Volt	12.03	(11.50, 12.60)	(11.00, 13.20)	(10.90, 15.00)	(10.80, 15.60)	
-12 Volt	-11.80	(-13.20, -10.92)	(-14.00, -10.20)	(-15.00, -10.10)	(-15.60, -10.00)	
-5 Volt	-5.14	(-5.25, -4.90)	(-5.80, -4.50)	(NONE, NONE)	(NONE, NONE)	
Current voltage	e and threshol	Current voltage and thresholds at +5 Volt source.				

Figure 281. Operational parameters - Voltages

The System Status window gives detailed information about the current status of the system:

- System Power: Can be either on or off.
- Power-on Hours: Total number of hours the machine has been switched on.
- System State: Gives the system state, for example POST started, No operating system activity detected, operating system activity detected, and system powered off.
- Fan: Shows the status of the fans as a percentage of the maximum.

System Status				
ltem	Status			
System Power	<u>ON</u>			
Power-on Hours	2,721			
Start-up Count	272			
System State	O/S activity detected			
Fan 1	59%			
Fan 2	67%			
Fan 3	66%			
€.	E I			

Figure 282. Operational parameters - System Status

#### 4.2.1.3 Configuration information

Configuration information gives you Vital Product Data (VPD) for the components in the system.

#### 4.2.1.4 Configuration settings

Here you can configure the settings of the ASM device, such as watchdog timers, modem and network.

· General settings

This window is used to configure the name of the ASM device, set time and date information, watchdog timers, and set up how you can dial in to the ASM device.

Configuration Settings - : NF5500	X
System Identification	System Management Processor Clock
Name : DominoR Number : 3013381	Time: 18 ↔ : 41 ↔ : 57 ↔ Date: 8 ↔ / 9 ↔ / 9 ↔
Dial-in settings         User profile to configure :       1 ♣         Login ID :       USERID         Set Password         Last login :       NONE         ☐       Read gnly access         ☐       Dial back enabled         Number :	POST timeout : Loader timeout : O → disabled O/S timeout : O → disabled Power off delay : 30 → seconds
Apply <u>R</u> efresh Reset	<u>Cancel</u> <u>H</u> elp

Figure 283. Configuration of the ASM device

• Remote event settings

This is used to set up how a remote system is warned if an event occurs. Events can be sent in the following ways:

- Numeric pager
- Alphanumeric pager
- · Netfinity serial
- Netfinity TCP/IP

#### • SNMP trap

Remote Event Settings - : NF5500	×	
Remote Event Entry Information		
Name : NF5500	▼	
Number: 13381 PIN:		
Type : Netfinity serial	y enabled <u>D</u> elete	
Remote Event Strategy		
Retry limit : 5 🛖 Entry spacing 15 🛖	Retry delay : 30	
Event status : NONE	Stop Sending	
Enabled Events		
Critical           Image: Critical <tr< td=""><td>System</td></tr<>	System	
	POST timeout	
✓ Voltage ✓ Power failure	Loader timeout	
✓ Tamper ✓ Hard disk drive	□ <u>0</u> /S timeout	
✓ Voltage regulator module failure     ✓ Power off		
Non-critical		
🔽 Temperature 🔽 Single fan failure 🔲 Application		
Voltage	PFA	
Apply/Add Refresh Cancel Help		

Figure 284. ASM device - Remote Event Settings

Modem settings

The upper frame of this window, Port Configuration, is for configuring the modem, which is used to forward a dial-out event.

The lower frame, Dialing Settings, is used to configure if users are enabled to dial into the ASM device. If the wrong user ID and password are entered it determines how long in minutes the user must wait to be able to connect again.

Modem Settings - :	NF5500			×
Port Configuration —	িৰ্বন			
Port to configure :	47		Baud rate :	38400
Initialization string :	ATZ			
Hangup string :	ATH0			
Port selected				Advanced
Dialing Settings				
☑ <u>D</u> ial-in enabled				
Dial-in delay	2€			
Apply <u>R</u> efresh	<u>C</u> ancel	<u>H</u> elp	]	

Figure 285. ASM device - Modem Settings

#### 4.2.1.5 Event log

This is the event log for the ASM device.

pti	ons <u>H</u> elp				
	Source	Date	Time	Text	
	SERVPROC	08/07/99	11:43:31a	Recovery Fan 3 Failure	
9	SERVPROC	08/07/99	11:43:23a	Fan 3 Failure Single fan failure	
	SERVPROC	08/07/99	11:42:02a	Recovery Fan 2 Failure	
9	SERVPROC	08/07/99	11:41:09a	Fan 2 Failure Single fan failure	
	SERVPROC	08/07/99	11:39:21a	Recovery Fan 2 Failure	
9	SERVPROC	08/07/99	11:38:58a	Fan 2 Failure Single fan failure	
	SERVPROC	08/07/99	11:37:33a	System log cleared.	

Figure 286. ADM device event log

#### 4.2.1.6 System power control

System Power Control enables you to power the system up or down.

**Note:** You will only be able to power up your system from a remote location if you have a serial link to the ASM device (modem or null modem).

System Power Control - : NF5500	×			
Enable power control options				
Power Control Options Power off with O/S shutdown.	1			
Power off now.				
Restart the system with 0/S shutdown. Restart the system now.				
Apply Cancel Help				

Figure 287. System Power Control

#### 4.2.1.7 Remote POST console

On supported systems, you can remotely follow the POST and go into the BIOS.

#### 4.2.2 Capacity Manager

Collecting and analyzing resources in the enterprise can be a very difficult task. Capacity Manager helps you by collecting and analyzing all kinds of information in your network and displaying this information graphically. Based on data that is already collected, Capacity Manager helps you to determine future requirements, and helps you by preventing bottlenecks in your systems (for example, disk space, overloaded network cards, and memory or CPU thresholds).

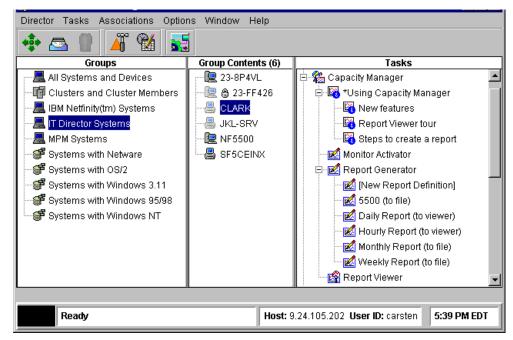


Figure 288. The Capacity Manager Life Cycle Tool

The software requirements for this LCT are:

- Console: Windows NT 4.0, Windows 95, or Windows 98
- Server: Windows NT 4.0
- Agent: Windows NT 4.0, Windows 95, Windows 98, OS/2 Warp 4.0, OS/2 Warp 5.0, NetWare 4.x, or NetWare 5.0

#### 4.2.3 Cluster Manager

The cluster tools are intended for Microsoft Clusters, and they are divided into two separate tools:

1. Cluster Systems Management

This is the actual management tool.

2. Software Rejuvenation

With this tool, you can set scheduled reboots of your nodes in the cluster.

To activate one of the tools, you have to drop the task onto a cluster (not a node in the cluster).

Group Contents : Cluster Membership (6)	Tasks
P 🙀 CMDR-CLUSTER20	CIM Browser
COMMODORE1	DMI Browser
	🖶 💕 Event Action Plans
É⊶III CLUSTER01	🗄 📲 Event Log
A MSCLUSOO	🗐 File Transfer
MSCLUS03	🖶 👼 IBM Cluster Tools
	🗕 📂 🎯 Cluster Systems Management
	👝 🗑 Software Rejuvenation
	🔤 🔤 Inventory

Figure 289. The Cluster Manager Life Cycle Tool

The software requirements for the subparts of this LCT are:

- Console: Windows NT 4.0, Windows 95, or Windows 98
- Server: Windows NT 4.0
- Agent: Windows NT 4.0

The following event types are added to the event filter (to get details of the Event Filter Builder, look in 6.2.3, "Event Action plans" on page 247 and 3.3.2.1, "Event action plans" on page 118):

📫 Event Filte	er Builder : New 💶 🗆 🗙
File Help	
E/	
Event Type	Severity Day/Time Category Sender Name Extended Attributes
T Any	

Figure 290. Event filters for clusters

#### 4.2.3.1 Cluster Systems Manager

With the Cluster Systems Manager tool you can manage all of the resources in a Microsoft MSCS cluster. We will not discuss the management of clusters in this redbook, but only the difference in functions between this LCT and the one that came with Netfinity Manager.

The GUI and the functions that you can perform have not changed. What you will see is that the Cluster Systems Manager has been integrated into Netfinity Director and because of that, certain tasks will be done in a different way. You can still drag and drop your resources, and you can still find a wizard to help you create certain resources. You can find the wizard in the Tools menu.

Events have now been moved to the Event Filter task. As you can see in Figure 290 on page 182, you can select among all sorts of events upon which to base your actions.

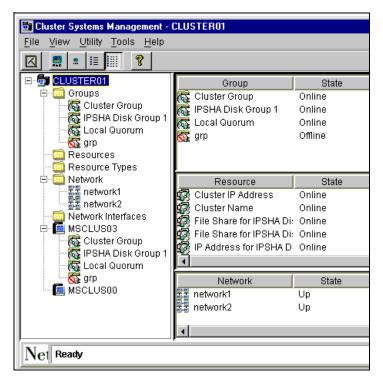


Figure 291. Cluster Manager GUI

#### 4.2.3.2 Software Rejuvenation

Not all applications clean up the memory they use. This causes the memory to get fragmented, which results in a decline in performance of your system. With Software Rejuvenation, you can schedule reboots of your servers, which of course, will clean up your memory. Our advice is to boot your server once every two weeks.

What actually happens when a Software Rejuvenation occurs? First, all cluster resources are moved to the other server. If the server is not up, the Software Rejuvenation is not going to happen. When the resources are moved, the server is booted. When it comes back up, the resources are moved back.

So you need to schedule this for each server in your cluster.

When you drag the Software Rejuvenation task onto a cluster node, you will see the following figure:

Software Rejuvenation - CMDR-Cl	USTER20						
Cluster is Enabled:				August-	1999		
O True 💿 False	s	М	Т	W	Th	F	S I
Nodes in Cluster:		2	3	4	5	6	7
	8	9	10	11	12	13	14
COMMODORE1 COMMODORE2	15	16	17	18	19	20	21
	22	23	24	25	26	27	28
	29	30	31				
	_						+
			Ot	otions /	Auto Acc	cept Ca	ancel Help
Net							

Figure 292. Software Rejuvenation

In the top left corner you see a frame called Cluster is Enabled. This can be set to either True or False, indicating if the cluster rejuvenation logic should be running or not. To schedule a Software Rejuvenation, you simply drag a node from the Nodes in Cluster frame onto a date in the calendar.

If you right-click a node that has been scheduled, you get the following menu:

18 19	
Repeat Schedule 🕨	
Remove Node 🔹 🕨	
Highlight All 🕨 💻	ł

Figure 293. Context menu in Software Rejuvenation

From here you can schedule repeated boots, you can remove the node from the schedule, and you can highlight all entries for the same clusternode.

If you schedule a Software Rejuvenation, you will be presented a window where you can specify the details about the reboot, such as date, time, and setting the event as a repeatable one. If you select Repeat, you will be able to select among different periods such as daily, weekly, and monthly, and you can select the frequency such as every day, every second week, every first Monday in a month, etc.

Repeat Schedule - COMMODORE2		×
Repeat Schedule - CUMMUDURE2 Repeat: Once Daily Weekly Wontly by date Monthly by day	Starting date: 08/16/1999 Reboot time: 12:00:00pm	X
Ok	ancel	

Figure 294. Setting repeating clusternode boot

Clicking the **Options** button from the Software Rejuvenation window gives you this menu:

Cluster Options - CMDR-CLUS	TER20
Cluster Failover Check	Rejuvenation Logic
O <u>S</u> kip Check	✓ Disable on Error
C Check f <u>o</u> r One	Min. Reboot Frequency
Check for <u>All</u>	1 🕂 Days
Ok Can	cel Help

Figure 295. Options menu in Software Rejuvenation

- Cluster Failover Check Defines the failover rules for the node.
- Rejuvenation Logic If checked, the rejuvenation will stop if any errors occur. For example, if you have two nodes, and you schedule a boot, then this will not happen if the other node is not up and running.
- Min. Reboot Frequency Ensures that the node can't be rebooted more often than this value.

## 4.2.4 IBM Netfinity SP Switch Manager

The software requirements for the subparts of this LCT are:

Console: Windows NT 4.0

By clicking **IBM Netfinity SP Switch Software**, you launch the GUI that is also accessible from the Start menu:

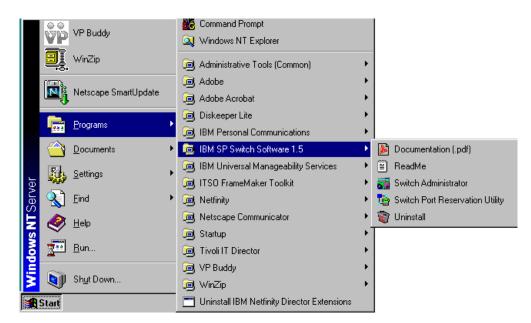


Figure 296. The IBM Netfinity SP Switch LCT in the start menu

For information on how to use the Switch Administrator, click **IBM SP Switch Software1.5 -> Documentation (.pdf)** to obtain the *SP Switch, Installation and User's Guide.* 

### 4.2.5 ServeRAID Manager

With ServeRAID Manager you are able to view and configure RAID subsystems.

The software requirements for the subparts of this LCT are:

- Console: Windows NT 4.0, Windows 95, or Windows 98
- Server: Windows NT 4.0
- Agent: Windows NT 4.0, Windows 95, Windows 98, OS/2 Warp 4.0, OS/2 Warp 5.0, NetWare 4.x, or NetWare 5.0

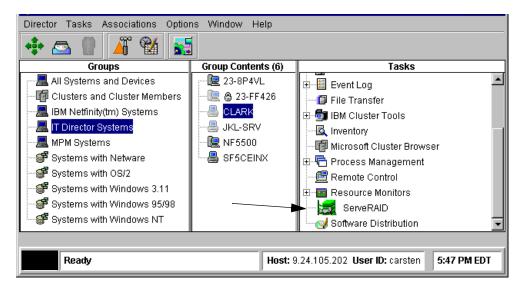


Figure 297. The ServeRAID LCT

The following event types are added to the event filter:

+ Event Filter Bu	uilder : New		_ 🗆 ×
File Help			
E/			
Sender Na	me	Extended Attr	ibutes
Event Type	Severity	Day/Time	Category
E	⊡ <mark>Netfinity Stor</mark> ⊡ ServeRA ⊡ Batte ⊡ Conf ⊕ Logic	ID Controller ny-Backup Iguration Change sal Drive ical Drive tem ne	4 

Figure 298. Event filters for ServeRAID

When dragged onto a server that has ServeRAID, you get the following window:

	<u>A</u> ctions <u>H</u> elp			
Managed Systems Image: Image of the system of t	om (Local System)	Ser Nu	system Information ver Name mber of Controllers erating System	Description or Value nf5500.itso.ral.ibm.com 1 Windows NT
Date Time	Source		De	escription
<ol> <li>08/11/19 06:27:13 PM</li> <li>百日 nf5500.itso.ral.ibm.com</li> </ol>		n.c	ServeRAID Manager	r started in TCP/IP mode

Figure 299. The ServeRAID LCT GUI

If you select the **Actions** menu, you can access the Notification and Security Manager.

The Notification Manager is a tool that is used to alert other systems running the ServeRAID Manager of the events that happen on the system (the system on which you started the ServeRAID Manager task). This can be used if you want alerts to be sent to your local workstation in addition to the event actions you select in Netfinity Director.

🛄 ServeRAID M	lanager - [Notificat	tion Manager ]		
<u>F</u> ile <u>V</u> iew	<u>A</u> ctions <u>H</u> elp			
📃 Notification I	Manager 🚾 Secur	ity Manager		
Hos	stname	TCP/IP Address	Port	Last Event Sent
nf5500.itso.ral.ibm.com		9.24.105.202	34571	08/11/1999 06:27:13 PM EDT
9.24.106.130		9.24.106.130	34571	😕 08/11/1999 06:27:15 PM EDT
Date	Time	Hostname Notification Event Descript		Notification Event Description
8 08/11/1999	06:27:15 PM EDT 9	9.24.106.130 Failed to connect to Hostname 9		to connect to Hostname 9.24.106.1
<b>1</b> 08/11/1999	06:27:13 PM EDT r	nf5500.itso.ral.ibm.com	) Notific:	ation Manager started.

Figure 300. The ServeRAID LCT - Notification Manager

Security Manager is used to give users access to configuring and viewing information from remote systems. It is possible to disable Security Manager from the menu, but it is not recommended to have unsecured access to the RAID subsystem.

Security Manager ]	
<u>H</u> elp	
>	
🗢 Security Manager 📔	
Full Name	Description
Administrator	Default Security Administrator
	Help Security Manager Full Name

Figure 301. The ServeRAID LCT - Security Manager

In addition, Security Manager also tracks events into a log file, RAIDSEC.LOG.

In total there are four log files:

- 1. RAIDEVT.LOG Information reported from ServeRAID Manager's event viewer
- 2. RAIDNOT.LOG Information reported from Notification Manager's event viewer
- 3. RAIDSEC.LOG Information reported from Security Manager's event viewer
- 4. RAIDMANERR.LOG Java messages from ServeRAID Manager

All of these files are installed in c:\program files\netfinity\raidman by default. Any log file gets renamed to \*.OLD if it exceeds 200 KB. Old \*.OLD files will be overwritten.

If you select **File -> User Preferences** you will be able to configure Initialization Settings.

The check box **Automatically initialize new logical drives** lets ServeRAID Manager automatically initialize each new logical drive and also prevents the user from getting access to the manual initialization function. When a drive is initialized, the first 1024 sectors of the logical drive are written over with zeros.

User Preferences		×
Initialization Settings	Remote Access Settings Alarm Settings	
_ Initialization Mode —	· · ·	
Z Autom	atically initialize new logical drives	
	OK Cancel Help	

Figure 302. The ServeRAID LCT - Initialization Settings

Remote Access Settings - The Local Only check box disables the ability to monitor this machine's RAID subsystem from a remote system, and you can't monitor remote systems either. The default port for the TCP/IP networking is 34571. This port number is stored in the properties file. The settings are not activated until you start up the ServeRAID Manager next time.

User Preferences			×
Initialization Settings	Remote Access Settings	Alarm Settings	
	🗖 Local Only		
	Port Number 34571		
	OK	Cancel Help	

Figure 303. The ServeRAID LCT - Remote Access Settings

Here is an example of the properties file RAIDMANGUI.PROPS:

	#IBM Netfinity RAID Manager GUI Properties #Thu Aug 12 14:01:55 EDT 1999 gui.frame.location.y=60 gui.frame.location.x=80 minimumalarminterval=10
	gui.frame.width=567
	autoInitNewDrives=true
	gui.shouldbeep=true
	startupPortNum=34571 <
	gui.frame.height=280
	localOnly=false
	gui.show.statusbar=true
	alarmduration=3
	repeatingalarm=true
	repeatingalarminterval=300
	gui.frame.iconfied=false
	mainPanelHeight=90
l	gui.show.toolbar=true
L	

Alarm Settings - The check box enables or disables repeating alarms. If you disable the alarm, you will not get an audible alarm if an event happens in the RAID subsystem. If the alarm is enabled, you can select the time interval between each alarm and the length of the alarm (number of beeps).

User Preferences	×
Initialization Settings Remote Access	Settings Alarm Settings
Repeating Alarm Options	
Enable Repeating Alarm	
Time between Alarms (seconds)	300
Alarm Duration (number of beeps)	3
	OK Cancel Help

Figure 304. The ServeRAID LCT - Alarm Settings

## 4.2.6 Configure Alert on LAN

Alert on LAN is a technology that enables alerts to be sent to a network administrator if a system problem occurs. It does not matter if the system is powered on or off. Alerts will be sent if there is a cover intrusion, processor removal or a power or network plug removal. If the system is running, or if the system detects voltage, temperature, and fan speed problems, alerts will also be sent. It can detect if the operating system hangs. Alert on LAN comes with the base Netfinity Director installation.

Maintenance capabilities have also been expanded with Alert on LAN 2 helping network administrators to perform common system support functions, such as remote operating system repairs or BIOS image updates, in response to system failures. In addition, a higher level of flexibility has been added to enable network managers to selectively respond to alerts according to priority, enabling them to address the most critical alerts first.

Alert on LAN 2 allows a management console to work directly with a PC. For example, when a PC with Alert on LAN 2 generates an alert, the console sends

an acknowledgment. This "handshake" ensures that alerts have been received and prevents multiple alerts for the same failure. Additionally, the management console now has the ability to poll a PC to determine whether it has Alert on LAN 2 capability, or to ascertain whether a mobile PC is connected and available for servicing.

In our environment, the Alert on LAN proxy tool was installed in the network by using the Netfinity Director Workgroup/Enterprise integration option and we configured the clients' AOL Agent to point to that proxy when sending their alert packets. The installation was done in Chapter 2, "Installation and customization" on page 37:

Select Components		×
	Please select the	e components that you want to install.
		Server Includes Server, Console, and Client
		Console Remote user interface for Netfinity Director Servers.
		Client Install on machines to be managed
		Workgroup/Enterprise Integration Installs UM Services integration for management environments.
	Г	< Back Next > Cancel
	L	Caricer

Figure 305. Workgroup/Enterprise Integration

#### 4.2.7 Asset ID

Asset ID comes with the base Netfinity Director installation. An EEPROM on the system board contains information about the system. In addition, you can enter your own information about warranty, leasing, purchase date and other information. Some of these systems also allow you to scan this information with a special radio frequency scanner. If there is a change in the configuration, Asset ID can send a DMI-compliant alert. UMS Asset ID can store information into the DMI database if no EEPROM is present on a system.

Asset ID information is divided into the following topics:

Serialization information

This reports the serial numbers by components, which have their serial number stored in the EEPROM or DMI database.

Name	Serial Number	Information
Processor 0	11S01K1579ZJ15NH96P1CJ	Intel Pentium II 450
Memory Socket 0	AD424120995B02541F	128 MB
Power Supply 0	J18M9724TD7	
System	238P4TZ	IBM 6862R1U
Motherboard	11S61H2324ZJ17JL7551BP	IBM

Figure 306. Asset ID - Serialization

System information

The LCCM Profile field will normally be filled out when a profile is put on the system by LCCM, or you will fill it out with a radio frequency unit before the system is installed. LCCM uses this name to determine with which profile the system is going to be loaded.

Serialization System User	Lease Asset Personalization Warranty	
System Name MAC Address Login Name Operating System	SF5CEINX 00:20:35:EF:60:45 carsten Microsoft Windows 95	
System UUID	A2201AB3-69A6-2112-B7AD-000629B0902C	
LCCM Profile	7/30/99	
Data space remaining: 121		Apply

Figure 307. Asset ID - System

• User information

The Name field is obtained from the registry or the operating system.

Serialization System	User Lease Asset Personalization Warranty	1
Name	IBM_USER	
Phone		
Location		
Department		
Position		
Data space remaining: 1	121 Apr	
Data space remaining: 1	21 App	oly

Figure 308. Asset ID - User

• Lease information

Lease information can be manually entered.

Serialization System U	ser Lease Asset Personalization Warranty	
Lease Start Date	July 🔽 30 📥 1999 📥	
Lease End Date	July July 30 🔺 1999 🔺	
Lease Term (Months)	0	
Lease Amount		
Lessor		
Data space remaining: 121		
Pata space remaining. 121		Apply

Figure 309. Asset ID - Lease

• Asset information

Serialization Syste	n User Lease Asset Personalization Warranty
Purchase Date	July 🔽 30 🔶 1999 🔶
Last Inventoried	July 30 🔶 1999 🜩
Asset Number	
RF-ID	6862R1U238P4TZ
Data space remaining	: 121 Apply

Figure 310. Asset ID - Asset

• Personalization information

Serialization System User Lease Asset	Personalization Warranty
Label	Value
Data space remaining: 121	Apply

Figure 311. Asset ID - Personalization

• Warranty information

Serialization System Us	er Lease Asset Personalization Warranty
Duration (Months)	0
Cost	
End Date	July 💽 30 📥 1999 📥
Data space remaining: 121	Apply

Figure 312. Asset ID - Warranty

# 4.2.8 LANClient Control Manager

With LCCM you can automate the installation of your clients, for example, BIOS updates, system installations, and system updates. See *Using LCCM Functions with Servers and Workstations*, SG24-5292.

# Chapter 5. Database support

Netfinity Director uses a database to store the information gathered by the inventory task. Netfinity Director can use different kinds of Database Management Systems (DBMS) depending on your needs.

At the end of the installation process shown in Figure 57 on page 46, you are asked to choose which database system Netfinity Director should use.

Director Database Configuration			
Director Database Config	_	rector requires a database.	×
		Advanced Create DB2 database (DB2 must be installed and configured in your network).	
		Custom Select an existing IBM Netfinity Director database.	
		< Back Next > Cancel	

Figure 313. Choose database configuration

You have four choices:

1. Default

This is the preferred selection for most customers. Netfinity Director will install its own database. The default path and name for this database is <installation-drive>:\Program Files\IBM\Director\Database\Director.mdb

Note: The following is from the Readme file:

. . .

In this release of Netfinity Director 2.11 the ODBC drivers were updated to MDAC level 2.11, which is available through Microsoft. This package also updates the Jet Database drivers to version 4.0. When the default database is requested on a new installation of Netfinity Director server 2.11 a Jet 4.0 database is created. This version of the database cannot be viewed using Microsoft Access 97. A Jet 4.0 level database can only be viewed using Microsoft Access 2000. If Microsoft Access 97 is the only version of Access available, and it is desirable to view the Netfinity Director database through Access, then a Jet 3.5 level database can be used. This level of the database can be created through Microsoft Access 97. The database can then be used by Netfinity Director by setting up a ODBC data source for the new database and modifying the file TWGServer.prop to use the new data source. The User's Guide has more information about setting up Netfinity Director to use an existing database.

If needed, Microsoft Data Access (MDAC) is used by Netfinity Director V2.11 Server install to install and/or upgrade ODBC and its drivers. The MDAC install consists of two steps, with the second step being performed after the system is rebooted and the user logs on. The Netfinity Director Server will attempt to start as soon as the system is rebooted. Since the second step of the MDAC install does not start until the user logs on, the Netfinity Director Server database initialization will fail. You must reboot and log on and then reboot a second time to resolve this situation.

Netfinity Director server on Windows NT offers several database options. The default option uses the Microsoft Jet database. The Jet database allows storing the year portion of a date in either a 2-digit or 4-digit format. The ability to store the year in the 2-digit format will cause certain applications that check for Y2K problems to issue a warning about the database. This warning is not applicable to Netfinity Director's database, because the year stored by Netfinity Director is in the 4-digit format. ...

2. Advanced SQL

Netfinity Director provides you with the capability to export your data into a Microsoft SQL V6.5 or V7.0 database.

3. Advanced DB2

If you have IBM DB2 V5.2 you can export your data to it.

4. Custom

If you already have an existing Netfinity Director database in your enterprise that you want to continue to use, select this option.

#### Note: At Microsoft's Web page

http://www.microsoft.com/SQL/70/whpprs/jetmsde.htm, you can find a white paper describing the differences between JET and Microsoft SQL. There are guidelines to help you decide if you should use the JET or Microsoft SQL database.

# 5.1 Working with the default queries

The functions for storing and accessing data from within Netfinity Director are the same whether you installed the default database, Microsoft SQL, or DB/2.

Right-click **Inventory** and select **Open**. This brings you to the Inventory Query Browser. You could also drag and drop the inventory task onto a group or a group member.

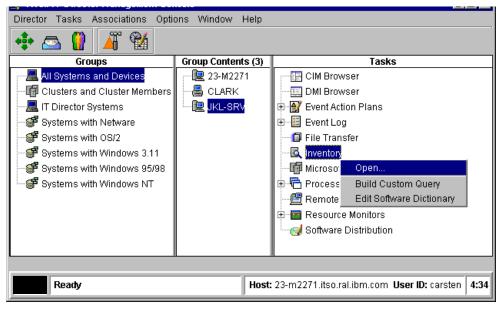


Figure 314. Netfinity Director Console

Netfinity Director already has a set of predefined queries defined. You can select these queries from the standard folder or add your own.

$\mathbf{Q}$					
Available Queries		Quer	y Results:Basic Sy	stem Information	1(3)
₽ 🖆 Custom		Name (System)	Processor family	Current speed	Physical Men
🗄 🚖 Standard 🥌		CLARK	PENTIUMII	450	130572
🔤 📴 Basic System Information		JKL-SRV	PENTIUMII	400	130484
- 🖳 Cluster Members		23-M2271	PENTIUMII	350	196008
Cluster Membership					
Component Id					
Disk					
IDE Adapter					
IDE Device					
- 🗟 Installed Memory					
IPX Address					
Keyboard					
LAN Network ID					
Logical Memory					
Memory Modules					
- 🗟 Motherboard	_				

Figure 315. A predefined query

You can build your own queries by right-clicking the **Custom** folder or by clicking **Options -> Build Custom Query**. You can also right-click a predefined query and select **copy**.

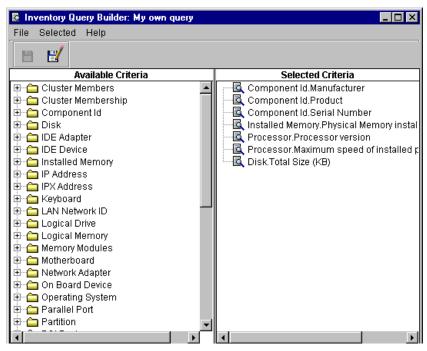


Figure 316. Building your own query

In order to easily build your own queries, double-click any folder and select the criteria you want in your query. You can add or remove criteria by double-clicking them. Use the add and remove tabs at the bottom of the window or simply drag and drop them.

When you have added the items you want to your list, save it by selecting **File** -> **Save** from the pull-down menu. All the queries that you create appear in the custom folder. You can sort all queries by right-clicking the column where you want the sort order.

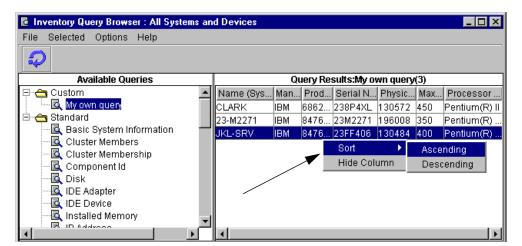


Figure 317. Sorting a query

# 5.2 Working with DBMS

During installation, you are asked which kind of DBMS you are going to use for storing Netfinity Director inventory data. The choice of DBMS doesn't have any influence on the GUI from Netfinity Director.

# 5.2.1 IBM DB2 V5.2 installation

To install IBM DB2 Universal Database on Windows NT, follow these steps:

1. Start the IBM DB2 UDB installation program by running setup.exe.

This will bring you to the welcome dialog box:



Figure 318. DB2 server setup

- 2. Click **Next** to begin the installation.
- The DB2 installation Select Products dialog box appears. Select the product(s) for which you have a license. We selected DB2 Universal Database Workgroup Edition. Click Next.

The Workgroup Edition is the core Universal Database Server.

Enterprise Edition is like the Workgroup Edition, but it enables connectivity to host systems, such as AS/400 and OS/390. Also, the Enterprise and Workgroup Editions have different licenses.

DB2 Client Application Enabler enables clients to access the database server.

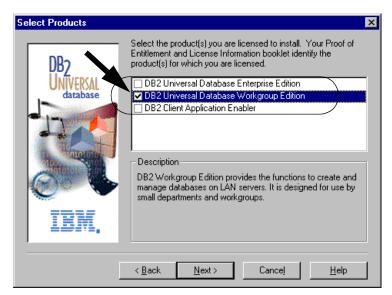


Figure 319. Select product

4. After choosing the product you are prompted to select the type of installation you want. We selected **Typical**.

Select Installation Type		×
	Select the install	ation type you prefer.
DB2 UNIVERSAL database		Typical Space required - 122.2 MB A typical set of DB2 components will be installed, and DB2 will be configured for the protocols on your system.
	B	Compact Space required - 44.7 MB Only required DB2 files will be installed, and minimal configuration will be performed.
	1	Custom Select the components that you want installed, and specify configuration options for DB2.
IBM,		
	< <u>B</u> ack	Next > Cance! Help

Figure 320. Select installation type

5. Enter the installation path and drive. Unless you have specific needs, just click **Next**.

Select Destination Direct	огу	×
BB2 CATABASE CATABASE	Setup will copy files into the following directory. You may modify the path to install to a different directory. Directory: C:\SQLLIB Browse Drive: C: 296 MB Space Required: 122.2 MB	
	< <u>B</u> ack Next> Cancel Help	

Figure 321. DB2 installation path

6. The DB2 installation program will ask you for an Administration Server user name and password. We changed the default user ID.

**Note:** The default user ID and password are *db2admin*. Be sure to change the password, so that other people do not have full access to your database.

Enter Username and Pa	ssword for the Administ	ration Server 🛛 🗙		
DB2 UNIVERSAL database	Enter the username and password that the Administration Server will use to log on to your system.			
-	Username	carsten		
O V	Password	жжжия		
	Confirm Password	XXXXXXX		
	< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext >	Cance! <u>H</u> elp		

Figure 322. Administration server user name and password

7. You are then presented with an overview of your selections. If you have no changes, select the **Next** button to start copying the files.

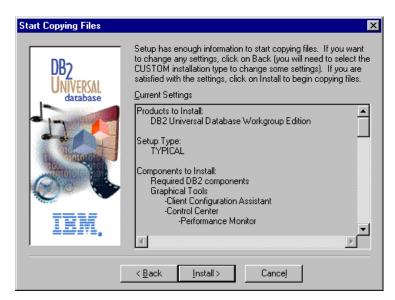


Figure 323. DB2 installation settings confirmation

8. After copying the files to your hard disk, the DB2 installation program responds with the following window:

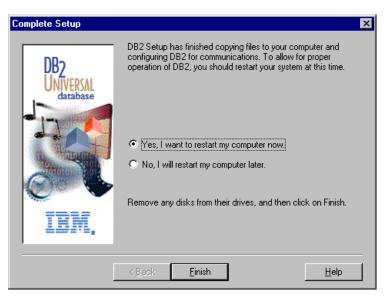


Figure 324. DB2 installation complete

9. Click Finish to reboot your Windows NT system.

You are now ready to install Netfinity Director on this machine.

When you come to the part where you have to select which kind of DBMS you click **Advanced -> Create DB2 database**.

Director Database Config	juration		×	
	IBM Netfinity Dir Select one of the	ector requires a database. e following:		
		Default Create default database. Recommended for most computers.		Select this for DB2 DBMS
		Advanced Create MS SQL Server database (Microsoft SQL Server must be installed and configured in your network).		
		Advanced Create DB2 database (DB2 must be installed and configured in your network).		
		Custom Select an existing IBM Netfinity Director database.		
· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		< Back. Next > Cancel		

Figure 325. Select IBM DB2 as Netfinity Director DBMS

Netfinity Director will ask you for a name and node name for your database. If you want the database to reside on the local system, don't put anything in the DB2 Node Name field.

Type in the user ID and password. Depending on the setup of DB2, you can choose not to have to enter the user ID and password to connect to the database. Under normal circumstances, you set up DB2 so that every user needs a user ID and password in order to select or change data. Click **Next** to continue. The rest of the installation is the same as the default installation.

Database Configuration				
Enter an ODBC Data Source name to refer to the database and the Database Name of the database on the server. Leave DB2 Node Name blank for a local Server instance; remote DB2 servers and local nodes will require a node name. Database security may need a User ID and Password.				
ODBC Data Source:	Director			
Database Name:	Director			
DB2 Node Name:				
User ID:				
Password:				
	<< Back Next >> Cancel			

Figure 326. IBM DB2 ODBC configuration

When you restart your machine you should see the following database has been created:

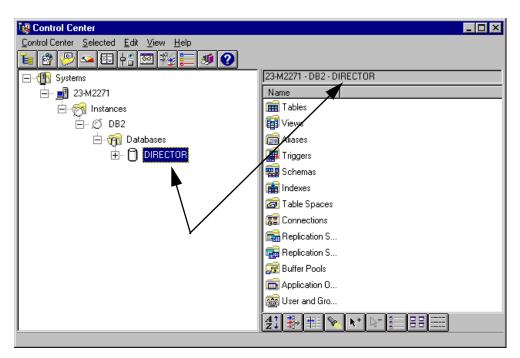


Figure 327. Netfinity Director Database in IBM DB2

If you don't have the Control Center on your desktop you can start it by selecting: Start -> Programs -> DB2 for Windows NT -> Administration Tools -> Control Center.

For a list of tables and columns in this database, see Appendix A, "Netfinity Director tables" on page 289.

#### 5.2.2 Microsoft SQL V7.0 installation

These are the steps required to install Microsoft SQL Server 7.0 on Windows NT:

1. Start the installation program.

The following window will appear:



Figure 328. Microsoft SQL startup

In order to install Microsoft SQL Server, you need to take care of some prerequisites. For Windows NT 4.0 you need Windows NT 4.0 SP4 and Internet Explorer 4.01 SP1, depending on the installation type you are going to install. After installing the prerequisites select **Install SQL Server 7.0 Components**. The following four choices are offered:

1. Database Server - Standard Edition

Used to install the full enterprise version of SQL Server on Windows NT Enterprise Edition.

2. Database Server - Desktop Edition

Used to install the desktop version of SQL Server on Windows 95, Windows 98, or Windows NT.

3. SQL Server 7.0 OLAP Services

Used if online analytical processing (OLAP) applications need to have access to your database through a Windows NT service.

4. English Query

This is a tool that enables users to post queries without having to learn standard SQL statements.

We selected Database Server - Standard Edition.

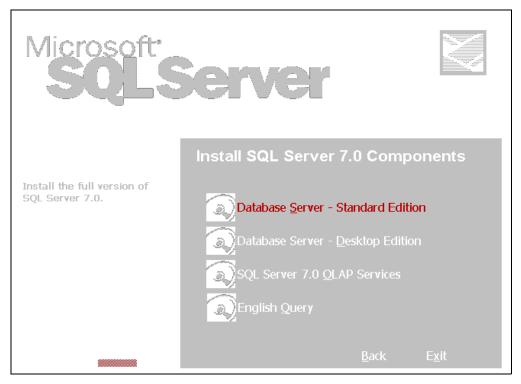


Figure 329. Microsoft SQL installation

When offered the choice of installing SQL server locally or remotely, we selected the local installation.

Select Install Method	Please select the install method below:
	<ul> <li>Local Install - Install to the Local Machine</li> <li>Remote Install - Install to a Remote Machine</li> </ul>
	Press 'Next' when ready to continue.
	<u>N</u> ext > Cancel

Figure 330. Microsoft SQL installation method

After making sure that you don't have any other applications running, click Next.



Figure 331. Microsoft SQL Welcome

Click **Next** to accept the software license agreement. Fill in the fields Name and Company and click **Next** to continue.

User Information		X
	Enter your name below. It is not necessary to enter a company name.	
	N <u>a</u> me: ITSO Raleigh	
	< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Cancel	_

Figure 332. User Information

Select the type of setup you prefer and change destination folders. We selected **Typical** setup and the default **Destination Folder** and clicked **Next**.

Se	tup Type			×	
	Click the type of Setup you prefer, then click Next.				
	Typical	Installed with the most common options. Recommended for most users.			
	O <u>M</u> inimum	Installed with minimum required options.			
	C Custom You may choose the options you want to install. Recommended for advanced users.				
	– Destination Fol	lder			
	Program Files	Browse C:\MSSQL7			
	Data Files	Browse C:\MSSQL7			
			Required:	Available:	
		Space on program files drive :	82753 K	247153 K	
		Space on system drive:	66855 K	247153 K	
		Space on data files drive:	30597 K	247153 K	
		Help < Back N	ext >	Cancel	

Figure 333. Select Microsoft SQL installation type

You can indicate how the SQL services should start and which user ID and password should be used when starting the services. We only changed the user ID and password.

Services Accounts	×
Use the same account for early	ch service. Auto start SQL Server Service.
C Customize the settings for each settings for each settings for each setting for each s	ch service.
Services	Service Settings
C SQLServer	C Use the Local System account
C SQL Server Agent	• Use a Domain User account
	Username: carsten
	Password: xxxxxxx
	Domain: 23-M2271
	Auto Start Service
Help	o < <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Cancel

Figure 334. Set up Microsoft SQL services

Now that the installation program has gathered enough information, click **Next** to begin installing the files to your hard disk.

Choose the licensing mode that you have for this product and select **Continue**.

Choose Licensing Mode	×			
Microsoft SQL Server 7.0 supports two client licensing modes:				
Per Server - Each concurrent connection to this server requires a separate CLIENT ACCESS LICENSE.				
Per Seat - Each computer that accesses Microsoft SQL Server 7.0 requires a separate CLIENT ACCESS LICENSE.				
Please click Help to fully understand the implications of the licensing mode you choose.				
Licensing Mode				
Per Server for     O     concurrent connections				
Add Licenses Remove Licenses				
C Per <u>S</u> eat				
Use License Manager (located in the Administrative Tools program group) to record the number of CLIENT ACCESS LICENSES purchased and avoid violation of the license agreement.				
Continue E <u>x</u> it Setup <u>H</u> elp				

Figure 335. Select licensing mode

You have now completed the installation of Microsoft SQL Server 7.0. Click **Finish**.

Setup Complete	
	Setup has finished installing Microsoft SQL Server 7.0 on your computer.
	Click Finish to complete Setup.
	Karak <b>Eack</b>

Figure 336. Complete setup

It is now OK to install Netfinity Director on this machine.

When you are asked which kind of DBMS you want, select **Advanced -> Create MS SQL Server database**.

Select one of the following: Default Create default database. Recommended for most computers Advanced Create MS SQL Server database (Microsoft SQL Server must be installed and configured in your network). Advanced Create DB2 database (DB2 must be installed and configured in your network). Custom Custom	
Custom Select an existing IBM Netfinity Director database.	

Figure 337. Select Microsoft SQL as Netfinity Director DBMS

You also have to set up an ODBC connection to this database. Fill out the Server Name field and follow the default installation procedure.

🔲 Database Configuration		
	urce name to refer to the database, the S , and the Database Name of the database	
ODBC Data Source:	Director	
Server Name:		
Database Name:	Director	
	<< Back Next >	> Cancel

Figure 338. Microsoft SQL ODBC configuration

After you reboot you should see the Director database in Microsoft SQL Server 7.0.

SQL Server Enterprise Manager - [Console]           Image: Description         Mindow         Help	e Root\Mi	crosoft SQL Se	ervers\SQL Se	erver Group	23-M D ×
Action ⊻iew Iools ↓ ← → € 🖬		😫    🔆   🕄	N   🏓 🛛 🕻	2 🕞	
Console Root Console Root SQL Server Group SQL Server Group Console Root SQL Server Group Console Root SQL Server Group Console Root Console Root SQL Server Group Console Root Console Root SQL Server Group Console Root Console Root Consol	7 Items Director	master iii tempdb	model	msdb	Northwind
Done					

Figure 339. Netfinity Director database in Microsoft SQL Server 7.0

## 5.3 Working with DBMS tables

To get to the information that is stored in the DBMS that you have selected, you can use any query tool that can connect to the DBMS.

#### Database definitions

A relational database contains one or more objects called tables. Your data is stored in these tables. Tables are identified by their names and are built with columns and rows. Columns contain the column name and data type. Rows contain the actual records or data for the columns. (Tables are hereafter referred to as DB tables.)

Here is a sample DB table called weather:

City	State	Temperature		
Raleigh	North Carolina	101	- Row	
San Diego	California	88		
Miami	Florida	99		
Column				

Structured Query Language (SQL) is a standard used for accessing data in relational DBMSs such as IBM DB2, MS SQL, Sybase, Oracle, Informix, MS Access, and others. SQL is also used for defining databases and putting in and manipulating the information in the databases, but that is not described in this book.

For each of the DB tables that are created in the DBMS a standard query is provided in the Inventory Query Browser in Netfinity Director.

Here is a list of the DB tables and the corresponding standard queries in Netfinity Director. If you need to know what kind of data is in a table, just click the corresponding query in the Inventory Query Browser.

Table 9. Comparing DB table names and Netfinity Director standard queries

IBM DB2 table name	Microsoft SQL table name	Query name in inventory query browser
N/A	N/A	Basic System Information
MSCS_CLUS_INFO	MSCS_CLUS_INFO	Windows NT Cluster Information
MSCS_GROUP_RES	MSCS_GROUP_RES	Windows NT Cluster Group Resource Map
MSCS_GROUPS	MSCS_GROUPS	Windows NT Cluster Groups
MSCS_NET_INT	MSCS_NET_INT	Windows NT Cluster Network Interfaces
MSCS_RESOURCES	MSCS_RESOURCES	Windows NT Cluster Resources
TWG_CLUS_MEMBERSH	TWG_CLUS_MEMBERSHIP	Cluster Membership
TWG_CLUSTER_MEMBE	TWG_CLUSTER_MEMBERS	Cluster Members
TWG_COMPONENT_ID	TWG_COMPONENT_ID	Component ID
TWG_DISK	TWG_DISK	Disk
TWG_IDE_ADAPTER	TWG_IDE_ADAPTER	IDE Adapter
TWG_IDE_DEVICE	TWG_IDE_DEVICE	IDE Device
TWG_INSTALLED_MEM	TWG_INSTALLED_MEMORY	Installed Memory
TWG_IP_ADDRESS	TWG_IP_ADDRESS	IP Address
TWG_IPX_ADDRESS	TWG_IPX_ADDRESS	IPX Address
TWG_KEYBOARD	TWG_KEYBOARD	Keyboard
TWG_LOGICAL_DRIVE	TWG_LOGICAL_DRIVE	Logical Drive
TWG_LOGICAL_MEMOR	TWG_LOGICAL_MEMOR	Logical Memory
TWG_MANAGED_OBJEC	TWG_MANAGED_OBJECT	System
TWG_MEM_MODULE	TWG_MEM_MODULE	Memory Modules
TWG_MOTHERBRD_ID	TWG_MOTHERBOARD_ID	Motherboard
TWG_NETWORK_ADAPT	TWG_NETWORK_ADAPTER	Network Adapter
TWG_ONBOARD_DEV	TWG_ONBOARD_DEV	On Board Device
TWG_OPERATING_SYS	TWG_OPERATING_SYSTEM	Operating System
TWG_PARALLEL_PORT	TWG_PARALLEL_PORT	Parallel Port
TWG_PARTITION	TWG_PARTITION	Partition
TWG_PCI_DEVICE	TWG_PCI_DEVICE	PCI Device
TWG_PHYS_CONT_GBL	TWG_PHYS_CONTAINER_GLOBAL	Physical Enclosure
TWG_POINT_DEVICE	TWG_POINTING_DEVICE	Pointing Device
TWG_PRINTER	TWG_PRINTER	Printer
TWG_PROCESSOR	TWG_PROCESSOR	Processor

IBM DB2 table name	Microsoft SQL table name	Query name in inventory query browser
TWG_SCSI_ADAPTER	TWG_SCSI_ADAPTER	SCSI Adapter
TWG_SCSI_DEVICE	TWG_SCSI_DEVICE	SCSI Device
TWG_SERIAL_PORT	TWG_SERIAL_PORT	Serial Port
TWG_SOFTWARE	TWG_SOFTWARE	Software
TWG_SYS_LOCATION	TWG_SYSTEM_LOCATION	System Location
TWG_SYS_RESOURCE	TWG_SYS_RESOURCE	System Resource
TWG_SYSTEM_BIOS	TWG_SYSTEM_BIOS	System BIOS
TWG_SYSTEM_USER	TWG_SYSTEM_USER	System User
TWG_VIDEO	TWG_VIDEO	Video
TWG_WINDOW_NET_ID	TWG_WINDOWS_NETWORK_ID	LAN Network ID

The Basic System Information Query is a combination of several DB tables. You can see how to make your own query that matches this default query in 5.3.1, "Making your own database queries" on page 218.

Note: UM Services adds several new database tables as well:

- UMS\_AOL
- UMS\_ASSETID
- UMS\_CACHE
- UMS\_CIM
- UMS\_CONFIG
- UMS\_LEASE
- UMS\_LOCALE
- UMS\_PERSONALIZATION
- UMS\_PORTS
- UMS\_SERIALIZATION
- UMS\_SLOT
- UMS\_SNMP
- UMS\_UMS
- UMS\_USER
- UMS\_WARRANTY

The table definitions and query names corresponding to the tables are in \Director\Data\UserTables\\*.twgbdt. The status of the tables processing is in \Director\Data\UserTables\\*.status, and the

\Director\Data\InvExtension\\*.ciminvext files specify which CIM information is collected and how it should be mapped to the database tables.

Depending on the method you use to connect to the Netfinity Director database, you first have to specify which database you are going to use. Each DBMS has a different method of logging in to the database and entering SQL commands. For IBM DB2 and Microsoft SQL this can be done with the following commands:

For IBM DB2: CONNECT TO dbname

For Microsoft SQL: USE dbname

The SQL query for a Netfinity Director standard query would look like the following:

SELECT \* FROM db-tablename

In this example we show you how a script would look in DB2 if you want to make your own script. It does the same thing as the System BIOS Netfinity Director default script. The query would look exactly the same no matter what program you use to connect to your tables.

🖀 Command Center	_ 🗆 🗵
<u>Script</u> <u>E</u> dit <u>H</u> elp	
Q <sub>2</sub> <b>≥ 2 +: ∞  ≥  ≥  ≈  ≥  ∞  2</b>	
Script Results Access Plan	
O Interactive O Script	
Untitled1	•
CONNECT TO director SELECT * FROM twg_video	4
4	

Figure 340. Example of a script in IBM DB2

The query gave us the following result:

Prommand Center	_ 🗆 ×
<u>R</u> esults <u>E</u> dit <u>H</u> elp	
\$\$\$\$ <mark>\$</mark>	
Script Results Access Plan	
MANAGED_OBJ_ID_VIDEO_INDEX_VIDEO_TYPE	VI 🔺
207 1 SUGA	S3
1 record(s) selected.	

Figure 341. Result of DB2 script 1 of 3

Ø	Com	mand	l Ce	nter													_ 🗆 ×
<u>R</u> e	sults	<u>E</u> dit	_														
Ø	3	E	9	<u></u>	<u>1</u>	╞╝┇	2 P	1		2	1	0					
	8									·			5				
Sc	ript	, Resi	ults	Acces	s Plar	ı)											
	DEO	_ADA	<b>APTE</b>	R							VIDE	E0_	MEMORY	_кв	COLORS		HOF
	In	corr	ora	ated	Tri	.03D	Diso	lau	Dri	ver Ve			 4	096		256	
							P									230	
	4																
Ľ	<u> </u>								<u> </u>			_		_			

Figure 342. Result of DB2 script 2 of 3

嶜 Command Center				_ 🗆 🗵		
<u>R</u> esults <u>E</u> dit <u>H</u> elp						
<b>O</b> O <b>1 0 1</b>	© <sub>©</sub> <u>⊧                                   </u>					
Script Results Access	Plan					
	VIDEO_MEMORY_KB COLO	RS HORI	ZONTAL_RES VERT	ICAL_RES 🔺		
play Driver Ve	4096	256	1024	768		
				<b>-</b>		
•						

Figure 343. Result of DB2 script 3 of 3

Following is how it looked in Microsoft SQL:

🛋 Query - 2	3-m2271.Director.	23-M2271\carsten -	(untitled) - USE DIR	ECTOR S*	
🗎 🚅 🔒	🗙   X 🖻 🛍	M 🗏 🗝 🖌 🔸		<u>D</u> B: Director	•
USE DIREC SELECT *	TOR FROM TWG_VIDE	: <b>0</b>			<u>^</u>
•					
MANAGED_O	BJ_ID VIDEO_:	INDEX VIDEO_TYP	E		VIDEC 🔺
208	1	SVGA			S3 In
(1 row(s)	affected)				
_					-
Results					Þ
Query batch c	ompleted.		Exec time: 0:00:00	1 rows	Ln 2, Col 24

Figure 344. Example of a script and result in Microsoft SQL

The corresponding default query from Netfinity Director gave the same result:

🗟 Inventory Query Browser :	All Systems and	Devices			. 🗆 🗡
File Selected Options He	lp				
<b>Q</b>					
Available Queries		Query R	esults:Video(	1)	
Serial Port	Name (Sys A	dapter ind	Type of dis	Type of ada	Amour
Software	23-M2271 1		SVGA	S3 Incorpor	4096
System BIOS					
System Location					
🛛 🗟 System Resourc					
System User					
Video					
Windows NT Clu					
Windows NT Clu					
Windows NT Clu					
Windows NT Clu					

Figure 345. Result of Netfinity Director default script 1 of 2

Inventory Query Browser :	All Systems and Devices	_ 🗆 🗵
File Selected Options He	lp	
Ð		
Available Queries	Query Results:Video(1)	
Serial Port	of ada Amount of Number of Horizontal r	Vertical res
Software	orpor 4096 256 1024	768
System		
System BIOS		
System Location		
System Resourc		
System User		
Windows NT Clu		
	•	•

Figure 346. Result of Netfinity Director default script 2 of 2

### 5.3.1 Making your own database queries

The Basic System Information Query in the Inventory Query Browser is an example of a query that spans several DB table. (You can see the comparison of the queries in the Inventory Query Browser and the DB tables in Table 9 on page 214.)

**Note**: All the examples in this chapter are screen dumps based on queries made in IBM DB2. To make the corresponding queries in another DBMS, refer to Appendix A, "Netfinity Director tables" on page 289 to see the table names and column names.

Before we get into how that query is made, let's look at some SQL basics.

## 5.3.1.1 Basics of the SELECT statement

In 5.3, "Working with DBMS tables" on page 213 we saw that a simple query from a single DB table looks like:

SELECT \* FROM db-tablename

This query will select all rows (data) from the specified DB table. If you only want specific columns from a table, or if you want the columns in another order, you need to specify which columns, and separate them by commas:

SELECT columnname, columnname... FROM db-tablename

Let's see what the result is if we select all video subsystem information:

db2 => SELECT * FROM	1 twg_video	
MANAGED_OBJ_ID VIDEO	_INDEX VIDEO_TYP	E VIDEO_ADAPTER
203	1 SVGA	Super VGA (VESA)
207	1 SVGA	S3 Incorporated Trio3D Display Driver V
205	1 VGA	Video Graphics Array (VGA)
209	1 SVGA	Super VGA (VESA)
208	1 SVGA	S3 Incorporated Trio3D Display Driver V
210	1 SVGA	S3 Incorporated Trio3D Display Driver V
6 record(s) select	ed.	

The statement selected all entries in the selected table, because we didn't set any conditions.

As you can see in the result of your query, you cannot tell which computer name your video adapter information belongs to. This is because every DB table has a column (MANAGED\_OBJ\_ID) that represents just a unique numeric value for each computer, and not the actual system name. This numeric value is called a key.

A key is a column or a set of columns that uniquely identifies a given row. This means two things: no two rows can have the same key, and even if two rows are alike (as in our example above, it is possible for us to have two computers with the same type of video adapter, the key ensures that the data doesn't get mixed. Keys are made up of primary and foreign keys, but that is beyond the scope of this chapter.

### 5.3.1.2 DISTINCT and eliminating duplicates

If you want a list of all the different video adapters that you have in all your systems, you could use this query:

SELECT video\_adapter FROM twg\_video

db2 => SELECT video\_adapter FROM twg\_video
VIDEO\_ADAPTER
Super VGA (VESA)
S3 Incorporated Trio3D Display Driver Ve
Video Graphics Array (VGA)
Super VGA (VESA)
S3 Incorporated Trio3D Display Driver Ve
S3 Incorporated Trio3D Display Driver Ve
6 record(s) selected.

As you see, it gives you a list that contains a row for each system, and the same type of adapters are displayed more than once. If you wanted a list of all the *different* types of adapters, this is done with the DISTINCT keyword:

SELECT DISTINCT video\_adapter FROM twg\_video

As you can see, now you only get every adapter type once. Always remember to use the DISTINCT keyword on the column, where the repetition may occur.

#### 5.3.1.3 Conditional selection

You may not always want to select all of the data in a table. This section describes some of the methods for reducing the output of a query to include only rows that satisfy your criteria.

There are six relational operators in SQL:

=	Equal			
<> or !=	Not equal			
<	Less than			
>	Greater than			
<=	Less than or equal to			
>=	Greater than or equal to			

Table 10. Operators in SQL

The *where* clause is used if you want to select rows, depending on specific conditions:

SELECT \* FROM db-tablename

```
WHERE search-condition(s)
```

Below is an example of a query that can be done in the Netfinity Director database, where we select all systems with Windows NT as the operating system:

```
SELECT *
FROM twg_operating_sys
WHERE op_sys_name = 'WINNT'
```

**Note:** Generally, with text columns, stick to equal and not equal and make sure to surround the value with single quotes (' ').

### 5.3.1.4 Logical operators

You can always join more search conditions with the logical operators AND and OR. AND and OR operators can be combined (note that the AND operation is done first).

- AND operators join two or more conditions, and display a row *only* if that row's data satisfies all conditions listed.
- OR operators join two or more conditions, and display a row if *any* of the conditions are true.

For example, select computers with Pentium II processors, that are also running at least 400 MHz:

```
SELECT *
FROM twg_processor
WHERE family = 'PENTIUMII' AND max_speed >= 400
```

Be careful when using AND and OR operators at the same time. The result of your query can easily be something other than what you expected. For example, you are a used-car dealer, and all your cars are in a table. If you want all Fords that cost less than 10,000 or have more millage greater than a set value, use this query:

SELECT carid FROM cartable WHERE brand="FORD" AND cost<10000 OR xxx<yyy

The result of the above query would include all brands other than Ford, if you had any cars that satisfied the condition xxx<yyy.

To get the result that we were looking for, you need to change the default way that SQL handles these two operators. This can be accomplished by using parentheses:

```
SELECT carid
FROM cartable
WHERE brand="FORD" AND (cost<10000 OR xxx<yyy)
```

### 5.3.1.5 IN and BETWEEN

An easier way of using compound conditions is by using the operators IN or BETWEEN. For example, if you want a list of all of the desktops in your company with their type and serial number, instead of specifying the conditions:

```
SELECT machine_model, machine_serial
FROM twg_phys_container_global
WHERE machinetype = 'xxx' AND machinetype = 'yyy' AND machinetype = 'zzz'
```

You can use the IN... operator:

SELECT machine\_model, machine\_serial
FROM twg\_phys\_container\_global
WHERE machinetype IN ('xxx', 'yyy', 'zzz')

An example of the BETWEEN condition would be if you wanted a list of systems that had a hard disk between 1 GB and 2 GB:

SELECT FROM WHERE XXX BETWEEN

To list all the systems that are not in this range, try:

SELECT FROM WHERE XXX NOT BETWEEN

Also, you can use NOT IN to exclude systems from the result.

Additionally, NOT can be used with AND and OR. Always make test queries to be sure of the result you are getting and always refer to the SQL reference book for your DBMS.

The SQL order of logical operations (each operation operates from left to right) is:

- 1. NOT
- 2. AND
- 3. OR

#### 5.3.1.6 LIKE

Let's say you want a list of machine types and serial numbers for all your Netfinity 3000 servers. Instead of making a query with the IN statement containing all of the machine types that a Netfinity server can have, you can use a LIKE statement:

SELECT product, serial\_number FROM twg\_component\_id WHERE product LIKE '8476%'

db2 => select product, serial\_number from twg\_component\_id where product like '8476%'

```
PRODUCT SERIAL NUMBER
```

```
847621U 23M2271
847631U 23FF406
847631U 23FF426
```

34/631U 23FF426

3 record(s) selected.

#### 5.3.1.7 Joins

Until now, we have only been able to get a numeric value (the key) instead of the system name as a description for the computer from our query. To get the computer name into the query instead of a numeric value, you have to tie the numeric values (the keys) in managed\_obj\_id together with the DB tables that you

select your data from. After that, you can include the *c*omputer\_name column in the twg\_window\_net\_id DB table. This is called joining tables.

There are different ways of joining tables together. We'll only discuss inner joins in this section.

First, let's look at some basics. If you want to select all the data from more than one DB table, the way to do that is shown with the following query:

```
SELECT *
FROM db-tablename, db-tablename
WHERE db-tablename1.key=db-tablename2.key
```

Since you don't want all the information from twg\_window\_net\_id, but just the computer name tied together with all the information from twg\_video, you'll have to modify the query. Instead of selecting all columns from all DB tables, you can select which columns you want by typing them just like in an ordinary query, instead of using '\*'. If you want all columns from a DB table, you just type the table name followed by '.\*'.

This will make the query look like:

```
SELECT twg_window_net_id.computer_name, twg_video.*
FROM twg_window_net_id, twg_video
WHERE twg_window_net_id.managed_obj_id=twg_video.managed_obj_id
```

**Note:** If a column name is only represented in one of the selected DB tables, you don't have to write the DB table name in front of this column name. In the next screen you can see, that computer\_name doesn't have twg\_window\_net\_id. in front of it.

db2 => SELECT computer_name, twg_video.* FROM twg_window_net_id, twg_video WHERE twg_window_net_id.managed_obj_id = twg_video.managed_obj_id COMPUTER NAME MANAGED OBJ ID VIDEO INDEX VIDEO TYPE VIDEO ADAPTER					
SF5CEINX	203	1	SVGA	Super VGA (VESA)	
	205	1	VGA	Video Graphics Array (VGA	
23-M2271	207	1	SVGA	S3 Incorporated Trio3D Di	
JKL-SRV	208	1	SVGA	S3 Incorporated Trio3D Di	
clark	209	1	SVGA	Super VGA (VESA)	
23-FF426	210	1	SVGA	S3 Incorporated Trio3D Di	
6 record(s) s	elected.			-	

Of course you can also combine the joining of tables and search conditions. The following screen shows a way to make a list of systems with an S3 video adapter:

```
db2 => SELECT computer_name, video_adapter FROM twg_window_net_id, twg_video
WHERE twg_window_net_id.managed_obj_id = twg_video.managed_obj_id AND
video_adapter LIKE 'S3%'
COMPUTER_NAME VIDEO_ADAPTER
23-M2271 S3 Incorporated Trio3D Display Driver Ve
JKL-SRV S3 Incorporated Trio3D Display Driver Ve
23-FF426 S3 Incorporated Trio3D Display Driver Ve
3 record(s) selected.
```

### 5.3.1.8 Aliases

As you learned in the preceding chapter, you have to use the format DB tablename.columnname if you want a column in the output that is represented in more than one of the selected tables. This can make your queries very long and very hard to read. Aliases can be used both as a description for columns and as aliases for DB table names. We show an example in which we want information about the system name, system serial number, and motherboard's serial number. From what we have shown so far, you would set up the query as:

```
SELECT computer_name, twg_component_id.serial_number,
twg_motherbrd_id.serial_number
FROM twg_window_net_id, twg_component_id, twg_motherbrd_id
WHERE twg_window_net_id.managed_obj_id = twg_component_id.managed_obj_id
AND
twg window net id.managed obj id = twg motherbrd id.managed obj id
```

The result would be:

But with aliases you can write:

```
SELECT computer_name computer, component.serial_number system_serial,
motherbrd.serial_number motherboard_serial
FROM twg_window_net_id network, twg_component_id component,
twg_motherbrd_id motherbrd
WHERE network.managed_obj_id = component.managed_obj_id AND
network.managed_obj_id = motherbrd.managed_obj_id
```

Here is the result:

In this later query you can see that you were able to change the headers (computer, system\_serial, and motherboard\_serial) in your output. Also, you used your own names (network, component, and motherbrd) as names for the DB tables.

#### 5.3.1.9 In subqueries

Lets assume that your output is dependent on data from another query, also known as a subquery; for example, a list of all computers (just the system name) that have an S3 videoadapter:

```
SELECT computername
FROM twg_window_net_id
WHERE managed_obj_id IN
(SELECT managed_obj_id
FROM twg_video
WHERE video_adapter LIKE 'S3%')
```

Here is the result:

```
db2 => SELECT computer_name FROM twg_window_net_id WHERE managed_obj_id IN
(SELECT managed_obj_id from twg_video WHERE video_adapter LIKE 'S3%')
```

```
COMPUTER_NAME
-----
23-M2271
JKL-SRV
23-FF426
```

3 record(s) selected.

#### 5.3.1.10 Sorting your output

The output of an SQL query is not sorted in any particular way. To get a better overview of your output, always sort your output. This is done by adding an *order by* clause in your query:

```
SELECT *
FROM db-tablename
(WHERE search-condition if necessary)
ORDER BY columnname(s)
```

More columns can be used for sorting. Just separate the column names with commas. Your output will then be sorted by your first column, then your second column, until you run out of columns.

#### 5.3.1.11 The basic system information query

You have learned how to combine, tie together, and select data from multiple DB tables. Let's look at how the basic system information standard query can be done:

```
SELECT computer_name, family, current_speed, physical_memory_kb,
op_sys_type,
op_sys_version
FROM twg_window_net_id netid, twg_processor proc, twg_installed_mem memory,
twg_operating_sys opersys
WHERE netid.managed_obj_id = proc.managed_obj_id AND
netid.managed_obj_id = memory.managed_obj_id AND
netid.managed_obj_id = opersys.managed_obj_id
```

#### 5.3.1.12 Aggregate functions

Having long lists of all your equipment is nice but not easy to understand at a glance. If you want to know how many computers from each manufacturer and how many machine types you have, it is not good to have a 150-page list with all your equipment. You need to get your data out of the database in another way.

Let's continue looking at how to get a manufacturer/machine type list out of the database. First you have to find out what DB table and columns you need for your output. The db-table twg\_component\_id contains the columns manufacturer and product.

Here is a basic SQL statement:

SELECT manufacturer, product FROM twg\_component\_id

```
db2 => select manufacturer, product from twg_component_id

MANUFACTURER PRODUCT

IEM 6862R1U

IEM 847621U

IEM 6862R1U

IEM 6862R1U

IEM 6862R1U

IEM 847631U

IEM 847631U

IEM 847631U

6 record(s) selected.
```

You obtained the right data from your database. But the problem is you have one row for every single machine in the table in the output and you will get redundant data. You haven't specified that you only want every system type *once* in the result. You can eliminate the redundant output by putting the syntax, GROUP BY in the statement, and sorting the output:

```
SELECT manufacturer, product
FROM twg_component_id
GROUP BY manufacturer, product
SORT BY manufacturer, product
```

```
db2 => select manufacturer, product from twg_component_id group by manufacturer,
product sort by manufacturer, product
MANUFACTURER PRODUCT
-------
IEM 6862R1U
IEM 847621U
IEM 847631U
3 record(s) selected.
```

This result shows us that there are three different kinds of systems in the organization. This is nice to know, but we still need to know how many there are of each type.

With the COUNT(\*) variable, you can count the number of entries the DBMS finds in the selected DB table. The syntax to do that follows:

```
db2 => select count(*) from twg_component_id
1
-----
6
1 record(s) selected.
```

Now you know the total number of systems you have in your organization.

**Note**: If you perform this query on a DB table that has more than one entry per managed\_obj\_id, you will not get the number of systems in your enterprise, just the number of rows in that particular DB table.

To combine the last two queries to get the result, you wanted to begin with:

```
SELECT manufacturer, product, COUNT(*)
FROM twg_component_id
GROUP BY manufacturer, product
SORT BY manufacturer, product
```

Now you have exactly what you wanted. From this query you can see that you have three different machine types in the database, and how many of each you have. You can also use an ORDER BY COUNT(\*) at the end of the last query. Your result will then be sorted so that you can easily see how many of each machine types you have. If you had planned to cut down the number of different machine types in the organization, you can see how many you might discard.

#### 5.3.1.13 Union

How do you make a query that will tell you how many servers, mobiles, and desktops you have in you organization? With *union* you can combine several queries.

Note: They need to have the same columns in the output.

Since there isn't a table where you can see what type the system is, you have to split it up yourself. First you need to know all of the different kinds of machine types you have:

```
SELECT distinct machine_type
FROM twg_phys_cont_gbl
```

Then you have to split your result into which machine type belongs to which category. That information can be used in the next query:

```
SELECT 'Servers' type, COUNT(*) amount
FROM twg_phys_cont_gbl
WHERE machine_type IN ('8473')
UNION
SELECT 'Desktops' type, COUNT(*) amount
FROM twg_phys_cont_gbl
WHERE machine type IN ('6862')
```

```
db2 => SELECT 'Servers' type, COUNT(*) amount FROM twg_phys_cont_gbl WHERE machine_type IN ('8473') UNION SELECT 'Desktops' type, COUNT(*) amount FROM twg_phys_cont_gbl WHERE machine_type IN ('6862')
```

```
TYPE AMOUNT
Servers 3
Desktops 3
2 record(s) selected.
```

If you have more machine types, just put them in the parentheses after the IN keyword (remember quotes and commas between each type). If you want more categories, just put in another union and select.

## 5.4 Working with ODBC

Open Database Connectivity (ODBC) is a standard for accessing data externally. With ODBC an application can use the same programming interface to access different DBMS. The DBMS has to have SQL as a data access standard. ODBC has four components:

1. ODBC-enabled application

This is the actual application to which you need to import data from the DBMS.

2. ODBC drivers

The ODBC drivers are the link between the data source and your application. The ODBC drivers come standard with Windows NT or are included with the program you use as a data source. The drivers eliminate the need to know all the proprietary interfaces to the different DBMSs.

3. ODBC Driver Manager

This is the tool that you see from the operating system (in Windows NT, Windows 95, or Windows 98 it is located in the control panel).

4. The Data Sources

The data source is the place where you have your actual data. Examples of data sources are MS SQL, IBM DB2, and Oracle.

If you choose to work with the custom DB, you can have an ODBC connection to that database as well. The default database can be connected to the Microsoft Access driver.

We will now show an ODBC connection to the default database. If you want to do this to either MS SQL or IBM DB2, all you have to change is the ODBC-driver.

Open the Control Panel and select ODBC Data Sources.

🔯 Control Pa							
<u>File E</u> dit <u>V</u> ie	ew <u>H</u> elp						
Ġ.		MS	×	Ť	5		
Accessibility Options	Add/Remove Programs	Console	Date/Time	Devices	Display		
A.	٨	<b>b</b>		((p))	2		
Fonts	Internet	Keyboard	Licensing	LiveUpdate	Modems		
õ	۶ <u>۹</u>	₽Ŷ			<b>P</b>		
Mouse	Multimedia	Network	ODBC Data Sources	PC Card (PCMCIA)	Ports		
Ş	real	0	¢		400 A		
Printers	RealPlayer G2	Regional Settings	SCSI Adapters	Server	Services		
<b>S</b>			2	<b>51</b>			
Sounds	System	Tape Devices	Telephony	UPS			
Maintains ODB	Maintains ODBC data sources and drivers						

Figure 347. Control panel in Windows NT for ODBC

Go to the System DSN tab and select **Add** to configure a new connection. Depending on where your database is located and who should have access to it, you might want to configure the connection in some of the other tabs, but in this example we just show how to make a local connection.

**Note:** Make sure that the level of ODBC you have is compatible with the database you wish to access. Windows NT Service Pack 4 changed the level of ODBC on our system.

Table 11. Types of ODBC data sources

Configure the Driver	Select
Visible to only the person who creates the data source.	User DSN tab
Visible to anyone who logs on to the system.	System DSN tab
Stored in a file and can be shared on a network.	File DSN tab

📢 ODBC Data Source Administrator	? ×
User DSN System DSN File DSN Drivers Tracing Connection	n Pooling About
<u>S</u> ystem Data Sources:	Add
Name Driver	
MQIS SQL Server	<u>R</u> emove
	Configure
An ODBC Sustant data as was starss information about t	
An ODBC System data source stores information about P the indicated data provider. A System data source is vis	
on this machine, including NT services.	
OK Cancel Apply	/ Help

Figure 348. ODBC connection overview

First, you will have to select a driver for your connection depending on which kind of database you want to connect to.

Name	Version	Comp
Microsoft Access Driver (*.mdb)	4.00.3711.08	Micro
Microsoft dBase Driver (*.dbf)	4.00.3711.08	Micro
Microsoft Excel Driver (*.xls)	4.00.3711.08	Micro
Microsoft ODBC for Oracle	2.573.3711.00	Micro
Microsoft Paradox Driver (*.db.)	4.00.3711.08	Micro
Microsoft Text Driver (*.txt; *.csv)	4.00.3711.08	Micro
Microsoft Visual FoxPro Driver	6.00.8428.00	Micro
SQL Server	3.70.06.23	Micro
		<u> </u>

Figure 349. Selecting a driver for ODBC connection

Then you type in a name and description for the connection as well as selecting the database file to use. To create the connection complete the action by selecting  $\mathbf{OK}$ .

ODBC Microsoft A	ccess Setup	X
Data Source <u>N</u> ame:	My own database	OK
Description:	This is a test	Cancel
Database		
Database: C:\data	abases\myown.mdb	( <u>H</u> elp
<u>S</u> elect	<u>C</u> reate <u>R</u> epair <u>Compact</u>	Advanced
– System Database –		
None		
O Da <u>t</u> abase:		
	System Database	<u>O</u> ptions>>
- Driver		
Page Timeout:	5 <u>B</u> uffer Size: 2048	
E <u>x</u> clusive	Read Only	

Figure 350. ODBC connection setup

Now that you have set up the connection your new link will show up in the ODBC connection overview.

🕙 ODBC Data Sour	ce Administrator	? X
User DSN System D	DSN File DSN Drivers Tracing Connection Pooling Abo	out
<u>S</u> ystem Data Source	es: Add	7
Name	Driver SOL Server	
MQIS My own database	Microsoft Access Driver (*.mdb)	-1
	<u>C</u> onfigure	
🔰 🤇 (🏹 the indic	3C System data source stores information about how to connect cated data provider. A System data source is visible to all users machine, including NT services.	
	OK Cancel Apply He	

Figure 351. Your connection is added to the ODBC connection overview

Now that we have made a valid ODBC connection setup, the next time you install Netfinity Director you can select **Custom** from the Director Database Configuration window.

Director Database Config	guration	×	
	IBM Netfinity Di Select one of the	irector requires a database. he following: Default Create default database. Recommended for most computers. Advanced Create MS SQL Server database (Microsoft SQL Server must be installed and configured in your network). Advanced Create DB2 database (DB2 must be installed and configured in your network). Custom Select an existing IBM Netfinity Director database.	
		< Back Next > Cancel	

Figure 352. Select database type

Now select the connection that you just created.

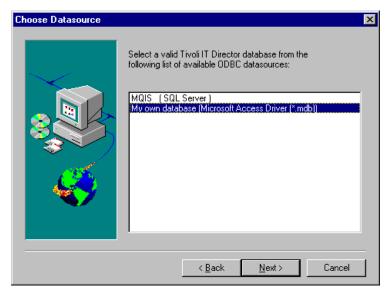


Figure 353. Selecting your own ODBC connection

# Chapter 6. Netfinity Director and Netfinity Manager

This chapter compares the functions that are provided by Netfinity Director with the functions in Netfinity Manager V5.20.4. This is done by taking a high-level overview of both systems' management tools and comparing their different functions and services. Netfinity Director provides many functions to help manage the environment. The focus of this chapter is to show the advantages of Netfinity Director over Netfinity Manager. The steps that are needed to go through the menus to show the differences between the system management tools are shown in this chapter. If you need more detailed information for handling the functions and services refer to 1.1, "Netfinity Director base functions" on page 1 and 3.2, "Base functions" on page 74.

## 6.1 Running Netfinity Director and Netfinity Manager together

If you want to integrate Netfinity Director into your existing Netfinity Manager environment you have to do it with a separate installation. You can't install both products with one command. The installation process for Netfinity Director is shown in 2.2.2, "Installation procedure for Netfinity Director Server" on page 38. Netfinity Manager does not support any access to the Netfinity Director systems and cannot use any data in Netfinity Director's database.

Netfinity Director does support the management of Netfinity Manager systems and can manage it with several different tasks. One of the ways that Netfinity Director is aware of Netfinity Manager is through the MPM API, which is provided during the Netfinity Director installation procedure. This is only possible when the Netfinity Director is installed on the same system where the Netfinity Manager is already installed. Figure 354 on page 236 and Figure 355 on page 237 show both windows that appear when you have first installed Netfinity Manager and then Netfinity Director. This is the only situation in which you will see these windows.

## 6.1.1 MPM support

MPM stands for Multi-Platform Manager and it is the result of a cooperative effort between Tivoli and Intel in September 1996 to allow different management software products to work together. MPM is an application programming interface (API) that each management software vendor can implement in its product to allow it to fit with other management products.

When you install the Netfinity Director Server, Win32 client, or OS/2 client on a system running Netfinity Manager 5.x, you have the option of installing Netfinity Director's MPM provider for Netfinity Manager 5.x. Then, when you run the Discover task from the Netfinity Director console, the system with the MPM Provider installed will be added as an MPM Site in the Available MPM Providers tab of the Discovery Preferences dialog box. MPM agents are the systems being managed by the Netfinity Manager system on which the MPM Provider was installed. To discover these MPM agents, you must manually move the Netfinity Manager system from the Available MPM Site list to the Active MPM Providers list. Clicking **OK** in the Discovery Preferences dialog box will initiate the discovery of its MPM agents.

When you install the Netfinity Director Server, you can also install the MPM-API related to Netfinity Manager. You must have Netfinity Manager already installed

and running when you install Netfinity Director. Once the installation completes and the system is rebooted, your system will be registered as an MPM provider. This means that other Netfinity Director servers on the network that don't have the MPM installed can still connect to your system and get a list of the Netfinity client systems you manage from your Netfinity Manager.

The MPM allows you to use Netfinity Manager (the minimum requirement is Manager V5.2) as a gateway to reach systems that only use the Netfinity Services management agent. The following management tasks are restricted (in compliance with the MPM specifications, which specify a minimum set of management capabilities):

- · Perform inventory collection
- Event log
- View inventory
- · Event action plans
- · Set presence check interval

### 6.1.1.1 Netfinity Provider

Figure 354 shows the configuration window that requires your input:

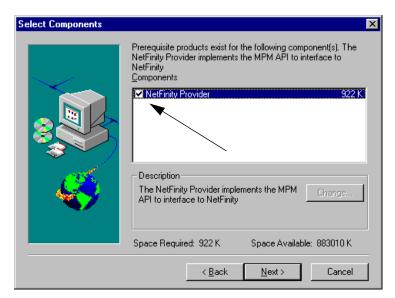


Figure 354. MPM API for Netfinity Manager

Enable the MPM API for access to Netfinity Manager by clicking the check box. Click **Next** to proceed.

Figure 355 shows information and functions that require your input. The path is shown for the Netfinity Manager database directory where the Dictionary File will be installed and the option to collect software and hardware inventory will be chosen. In addition, you can set the refresh period for how often it will be collected. The rate that you can select is from every hour to every 16 weeks.

NetFinity(tm) Provide	r Configuration	×	
Inventory Settings Database Directory:	C:\WNETFIN\nfmpmdb		select here for Inventory
Dictionary File:	C:\WNETEIN\default.sid		
Refresh Beriod:	Every day	•	select here for
Collect Hardware	Inventory		Refresh Period
Refresh Period:	Every day		
OK I	Cancel Hel	P	

Figure 355. Netfinity Manager database directory

Select **Collect Software Inventory** or **Collect Hardware Inventory**. Then set the **Refresh Period** to address how often Netfinity Director should collect inventory from the Netfinity Manager clients.

Click **OK** to proceed with the regular installation process as shown in 2.2.2, "Installation procedure for Netfinity Director Server" on page 38.

Netfinity Manager is a comprehensive system management program that is used to manage Intel-based server and client hardware environments. There are two pieces to Netfinity Manager:

1. Netfinity Manager

The Netfinity Manager is the managing portion of the system. It is normally installed on a server or administrator workstation. Netfinity Manager can manage local or remote systems.

2. Client Services for Netfinity Manager (client service)

The client service is the managed portion of the system and it is normally installed on the clients as a desktop or mobile system.

This software does not permit any extensions to its functions other than by using the command-line interface. There is no software developer's kit (SDK).

Figure 356 shows Netfinity Manager's main interface. It consists of a set of icons that provides the user interface for Netfinity Manager's functions. The functions and services are started from these icons. As a system administrator, this will probably be the most usable window. It provides access to use the Remote System Manager to access and manage any Netfinity Manager function on any Netfinity Manager system in your network. The Remote System Manager organizes the remote systems in groups:

System group

A system group is a group of individual systems that can be accessed and managed by the Remote System Manager.

Rack group

A rack group is a group of systems that are installed in a rack cabinet. Rack-mounted systems can be configured to include a rack configuration file. • Cluster group

A cluster group is special type of system group intended to let you manage the nodes of a Microsoft Cluster Server installation as a group. You define the group by entering the cluster name.

A prerequisite for you to be able to use these functions is that you must have at least one of the transport protocols active as shown in Table 14 on page 241. For more information on the core functions please refer to *Netfinity Server Management*, SG24-5208.

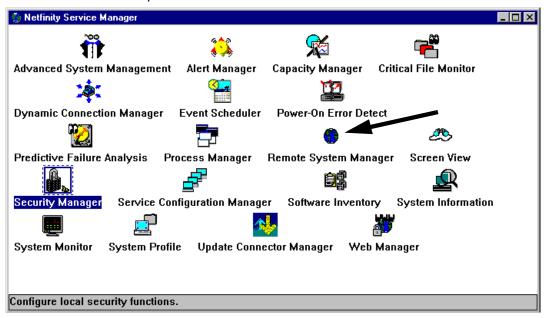


Figure 356. Netfinity Manager layout

Figure 357 shows the System Group Management. This function allows you to place systems into separate groups that can be created by each operator. Each of the groups can use a filter to search for different protocols or different operating systems.

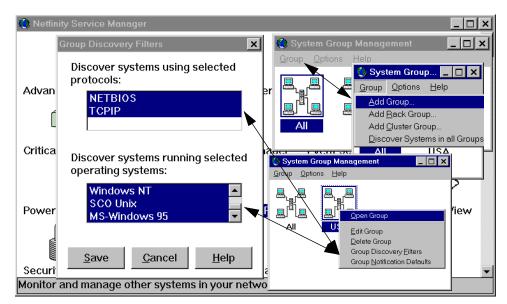


Figure 357. Netfinity Manager Remote System Manager

Searching for keywords is a function that is supported only by Netfinity Manager. Netfinity Director doesn't have this function. Figure 358 shows how to edit the System Group. It is possible to use up to eight keywords. Netfinity Manager will search for the systems that are set up with these keywords.

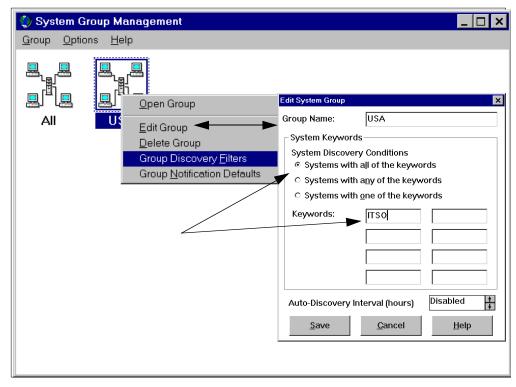


Figure 358. Netfinity Manager searching for keywords

Netfinity Manager supports a Web browser for local or remote management, while Netfinity Director does not. Either Microsoft Internet Explorer or Netscape Communicator can be used to manage the environment. The Web browsers provide the same function but in a slightly different layout. With the Web browser you do not have access to the following functions:

- Advanced System Manager
- Capacity Manager
- Dynamic Connection Manager
- Remote Workstation Control

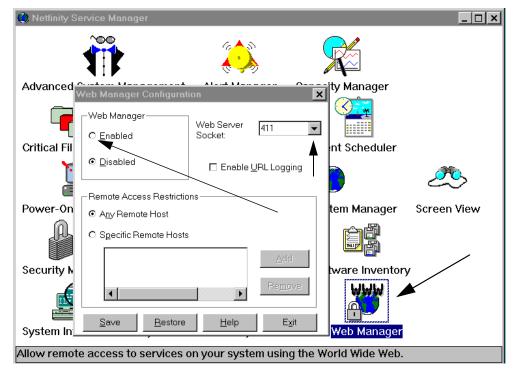


Figure 359. Netfinity Manager Web browser configuration

Table 12 shows a comparison of which operating systems Netfinity Manager and Netfinity Director can run. This table shows that Netfinity Director will support future operating systems and Netfinity Manager may not, but Netfinity Manager does support all of the current operating systems. This is very important because Netfinity Manager doesn't go away with the announcement of Netfinity Director. Netfinity Manager will still be supported until Netfinity Director has all the important functions included in Netfinity Manager. You have time to migrate to the new system management software.

Table 12. Operating Systems for Netfinity Manager and Netfinity Director

Operating systems	Netfinity Manager	Netfinity Director
Windows 95	yes	yes
Windows 98	yes	yes
Windows NT 4.0	yes	yes
Windows NT 2000	not announced	yes
NetWare 4.x	yes	yes
IntraNetware 5.0	not yet	yes
OS/2 Warp 4.0	yes	yes

Operating systems	Netfinity Manager	Netfinity Director
OS/2 - Aurora	not yet	yes

Table 13 shows the comparison of operating systems support for client services for Netfinity Manager and Netfinity Director Agent.

Table 13. Operating systems client services and NF Director Agent/UM services

Operating systems	Client services for Netfinity Manager	NF Director agent
Windows 95	yes	yes
Windows 98	yes	yes
Windows NT 4.0	yes	yes
Windows NT 2000	not announced	yes
NetWare 4.x	yes	yes
IntraNetware 5.0	yes	yes
OS/2 Warp 4.0	yes	yes
OS/2 - Aurora	not announced	yes

Table 14 shows a summary of functions and services that will be supported by both system management tools. More information on the meaning of the functions is explained throughout this book. Most of the details can be found in Chapter 1, "Netfinity Director functions" on page 1 and Chapter 3, "Core functions" on page 71. For an explanation about Life Cycle Tools see 4.2, "Life Cycle Tools" on page 173.

Table 14. Functions/services summary

Functions/services summary	Netfinity Manager	Netfinity Director
IPC (IPX, TCP/IP, NETBIOS)	yes	yes
Protocol SNA	yes	yes
Protocol Serial	yes	yes
LCCM Clients	yes	yes
Wake-on-LAN	yes	yes
Update Connector Manager	yes	yes
Hardware Inventory	yes	yes
Software Inventory	yes	yes
System Monitors	yes	yes
PFA Monitor	yes	yes
Remote Workstation Control	yes	yes
Process Manager	yes	yes
RAID Manager	yes	yes

Functions/services summary	Netfinity Manager	Netfinity Director
File Transfer	yes	yes
ECC Support	yes	yes
Alert Management	yes	yes
Alert on LAN	yes	yes
Cluster Manager	yes	yes
Capacity Manager	yes	yes
Life Cycle Tools (during UMS)	yes	yes
Asset Care	yes	yes
Event Log	no	yes
EZAdmin	yes	yes
Web Browser Access	yes	no
Y2K	yes	yes

Table 15 shows the supported Workgroup and Enterprise software. Netfinity Manager doesn't support all of the software that Netfinity Director does. Therefore, you can see that Netfinity Director provides a seamless integration into the Enterprise software.

Workgroup/Enterprise software	Netfinity Manager	UM Services (Netfinity Director)
Tivoli NetView for NT 5.1	no	yes
Tivoli IT Director 2.0	no	yes
Tivoli Enterprise Software 3.6	yes	yes
SMS 1.2	yes	yes
SMS 2.0	no	yes
HP OpenView	no	no
LANDesk Server Manager 2.52	yes	yes (MPM)
LANDesk Client Manager 3.x	yes	no
Novell Managewise	no	no

Table 15. Workgroup/Enterprise software

## 6.2 Comparing Netfinity Director tasks to Netfinity Manager tasks

This section explains the advantages of Netfinity Director over Netfinity Manager and which functions each provides. This comparison was made with Netfinity Manager Version 5.20.4 and a beta copy of Netfinity Director.

**Note:** Details on how to use the functions and how to go through the menus is not explained in detail in this chapter. This chapter shows the differences between

Netfinity Manager and Netfinity Director. If you need more detailed descriptions of the functions see Chapter 3, "Core functions" on page 71.

#### 6.2.1 CIM Browser

The Common Information Model (CIM) browser is part of Netfinity Director and it is installed during the normal installation of Netfinity Director. The CIM layer is also part of Universal Manageability Services and is installed during the UM Services installation. For more information about the standards and descriptions of the management features and capabilities you can access the Web site http://www.dmtf.org. You can start the CIM Browser with the drag and drop function or with a right mouse click of the system as shown in the following figure:

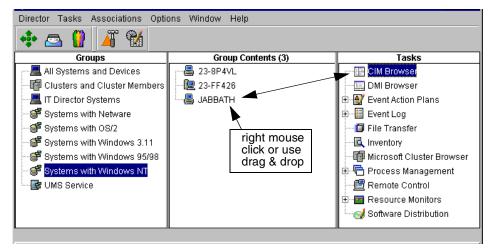


Figure 360. Netfinity Director CIM Browser

Figure 361 shows the information from the CIM request from Netfinity Director. It shows the schema root with several classes: CIMV2, Default, IBMPSG, and Security. For further information about this window and explanations about the different CMI layers see 1.4.2, "What is CIM and why is it important?" on page 12. You can also find more information about CIM instrumentation on different platforms in 3.2.2, "CIM compliant" on page 78.

CIM Classes	1	Instances	Min32 SharaTaDiractory				
UNICIONSES ↓ JKL-SRV	🗎 Mün22, ChoroToDiroston	Instances: Win32_ShareToDirectory  Win32_ShareToDirectory.Share="WW23-FF406\troot\\cimv2.Win32_Share.Name=\\ADMIN\$\\",SharedElement="\\\\23-FF406\troot\\cimv2.Win32_Share.Name=\\ADMIN\$\\",SharedElement="\\\\23-FF406\troot\\cimv2.Win32_Share.Name=\\ADMIN\$\\",SharedElement="\\\\\23-FF406\troot\\cimv2.Win32_Share.Name=\\ADMIN\$\\",SharedElement="\\\\\23-FF406\troot\\cimv3.Win32_Share.Name=\\ADMIN\$\\",SharedElement="\\\\\23-FF406\troot\\cimv3.Win32_Share.Name=\\ADMIN\$\\",SharedElement="\\\\\23-FF406\troot\\cimv3.Win32_Share.Name=\\ADMIN\$\\",SharedElement="\\\\\\23-FF406\troot\\cimv3.Win32_Share.Name=\\ADMIN\$\\",SharedElement="\\\\\\23-FF406\troot\\cimv3.Win32_Share.Name=\\ADMIN\$\\",SharedElement="\\\\\\23-FF406\troot\\cimv3.Win32_Share.Name=\\\ADMIN\$\\",SharedElement="\\\\\\\23-FF406\troot\\cimv3.Win32_Share.Name=\\\\ADMIN\$\\",SharedElement="\\\\\\23-FF406\troot\\cimv3.Win32_Share.Name=\\\\ADMIN\$\\",SharedElement="\\\\\\23-FF406\troot\\cimv3.Win32_Share.Name=\\\\ADMIN\$\\",SharedElement="\\\\\\23-FF406\troot\\cimv3.Win32_Share.Name=\\\\\ADMIN\$\\",SharedElement="\\\\\\23-FF406\troot\\cimv3.Win32_Share.Name=\\\\\ADMIN\$\\",SharedElement="\\\\\\23-FF406\troot\\\\\23-YF406\troot\\\\\\\\\\\\23-FF406\troot\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\					
⊡ root\CIMV2							
🗄 📋NotifyStatus				redElement="\\\\23-FF406\\root\\cimv2:			
🗄 🛅 🔤 PARÁMETERS	17 7 7		-	redElement="\\\\23-FF406\\root\\cimv2:"			
🗄 🛅SystemClass	Win32_ShareToDirectory.Share="\\\23-FF406\\root\\cimv2.Win32_Share.Name=\"LANC\$\$\\",SharedElement='						
🖶 📋 CIM_Component	🔋 📋 Win32_ShareToDirectory	.Share="\\\\23-FF406\\root\\cimv2	?:Win32_Share.Name=\"LANC\$AD	M\"",SharedElement="\\\\23-FF406\\roo			
🗄 🗒 CIM_Dependency	B Win32 ShareToDirectory	.Share="\\\\23-FF406\\root\\cimv2	:///in32_Share.Name=\"LC_CLNT	"S\"",SharedElement="\\\\23-FF406\\roo			
ElementSetting				AC\"",SharedElement="\\\\23-FF406\\ro			
			-	PL\"",SharedElement="\\\23-FF406\\ro			
E-CIM_Product E-CIM_Setting	17 7 7		-				
			_	CPV"",SharedElement="\\\\23-FF406\\ro			
Request pending		Share="\\\23-FF406\\roof\\cimv2	2:Win32_Share.Name=\"LCCM\$TN	/IP\"",SharedElement="\\\\23-FF406\\ro			
E SMS	<b>↓</b>						
🗄 📋 Win32_MethodParameterClass	Properties Methods						
🗄 📋 Win32_NTLogEvent	Property Name	Flavor	Туре	Value			
<ul> <li>Image: Win32_NTLogEventComputer</li> <li>Image: Win32_NTLogEventLog</li> <li>Image: Win32_NTLogEventUser</li> <li>Image: Win32_SecuritySettingAccess</li> <li>Image: Win32_SecuritySettingAuditing</li> </ul>	GENUS	ORIGIN SYSTEM	SINT32	2			
	CLASS	ORIGIN_SYSTEM	STRING	Win32_ShareToDirectory			
	SUPERCLASS	ORIGIN_SYSTEM	STRING				
	DYNASTY	ORIGIN_SYSTEM	STRING	Win32_ShareToDirectory			
🗄 📋 Win32_SecuritySettingGroup	RELPATH	ORIGIN_SYSTEM	STRING	Win32_ShareToDirectory.Sha			
🗄 📋 Win32_SecuritySettingOwner	PROPERTY_COUNT	ORIGIN_SYSTEM	SINT32	2			
Win32_ShareToDirecton	DERIVATION	ORIGIN_SYSTEM	Array - STRING				
- 🗐 root\Default	SERVER	ORIGIN_SYSTEM	STRING	23-FF406			
eretilemese	NAMESPACE	ORIGIN_SYSTEM	STRING	root\CIMV2			
🗊 root\Security	PATH	ORIGIN_SYSTEM	STRING	123-FF406\root\CIMV2:Win32_			
- El root/Security		OVERRIDABLE	REFERENCE	\\23-FF406\root\cimv2:Win32_			
⊡-•∰ root\Security	Share SharedElement	OVERRIDABLE	REFERENCE	\\23-FF406\root\cimv2:Win32			

Figure 361. Netfinity Director CIM request

Netfinity Manager doesn't support the CIM technology and doesn't provide any CIM information.

**Note:** The instrumentation provided by UM Services is in the root\cimv2 namespace.

## 6.2.2 DMI browser

A DMI browser enables you to examine information about the Desktop Management Interface (DMI)-compliant hardware and software products that are installed on your system. DMI is an industry standard that simplifies the management of hardware and software. Netfinity Manager and Netfinity Director both have a DMI browser included. The browser gets installed during the normal installation of Netfinity Manager and Netfinity Director. A DMI layer must also be installed so that the browser can have access to that layer. The layer must be active to deliver the information to the system. The DMI layer comes from third-party software and you can get it from the Intel Web site at http://www.intel.com (search for DMISL.exe). This software is free. A DMI layer is also included with the UM Services and is installed during this UM Services installation.

Figure 362 shows the Tasks icon for the DMI task in Netfinity Director and how to start it.

Director Tasks Associations Options Window Help					
💠 🛆 👔 🔏 🖬					
Groups	Group Contents (3)	Tasks			
All Systems and Devices		CIM Browser			
- 🕼 Clusters and Cluster Members	- 🖳 23-FF426	DMI Browser			
IT Director Systems		🗄 🔮 Event Action Plans			
💣 Systems with Netware		🗄 📲 Event Log			
🚽 💕 Systems with OS/2		🗐 File Transfer			
🚽 💕 Systems with Windows 3.11	right mouse				
🚽 💕 Systems with Windows 95/98	right mouse	- 🌆 Microsoft Cluster Browser			
Systems with Windows NT	click or use	🗄 🖷 Process Management			
📴 UMS Service	drag & drop	📲 Remote Control			
		🗄 🔚 Resource Monitors			
		Software Distribution			

Figure 362. Netfinity Director DMI Browser

Figure 363 shows the output of a DMI query. This information can't be saved in a file or database. It is just browser information. For more information about the DMI code and implementation see 1.4.5, "How is DMI used?" on page 33 and for additional information on the base function see 3.2.3, "DMI compliant" on page 79.

I DMI Browser: JABBATH						_ 🗆 ×
File Help						
DMI Components			Groups: ComponentID			
ABBATH     Win32 DMI Service Provider     Win32 DMI Service Provider     Service Layer Characteristics     Service Layer Security     Secure Security     Secure Security     Secure Security     Secure Secu			ComponentID DMTF ComponentID 001 1 This group defines the attributes common required.	n to all compo	nents. This gro	oup is
🖻 🖏 Artisoft Remote Utilities	Name	ID	Value	Access	Type	MaxSize §
Remote Control Component ID	Manufacture	r 1	Intel Corporation	MIF_READ	.MIF_DISPL	64 MIF.
	Product	2	Win32 DMI Service Provider	MIF_READ	.MIF_DISPL	64 MIF.
File Transfer Settings	Version	3	Intel DMI Service Provider (Win32) V2.54	MIF_READ	.MIF_DISPL	64 MIF.
File transier settings	Serial Num	. 4	unsupported	MIF_READ	.MIF_DISPL	64 MIF.
	Installation	6	Tue Jul 13 12:02:39 EDT 1999	MIF_READ	.MIF_DATE	28 MIF
	Verify	6	component exists, functionality good	MIF_READ	.MIF_INTEG	4 MIF
	4					×

Figure 363. Netfinity Director DMI request

Figure 364 shows the Netfinity Manager DMI Browser icon in the Netfinity Manager main window.

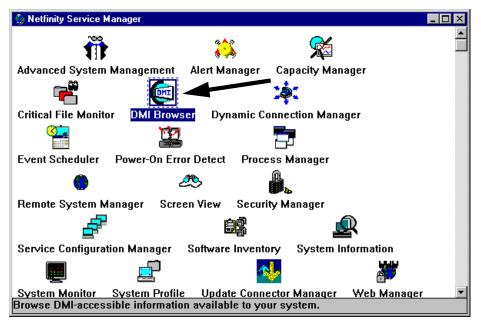


Figure 364. Netfinity Manager task icon

Start the DMI browser by double-clicking it. After you have started the icon the system will prompt you with a window similar to Figure 365. To get more detailed information, expand the folders. The icons on the menu bar that are circled have functions such as Register with a service provider, Unregister with a service provider, Install a new component into the service layer, and uninstall an existing component. These functions are not supported from a Web browser.

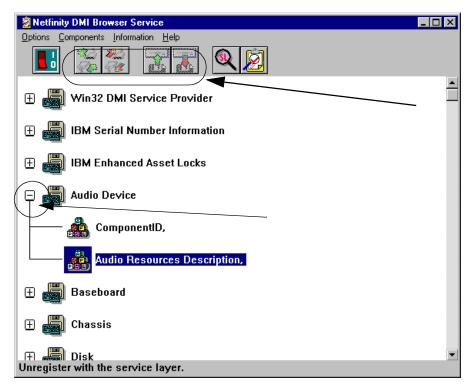


Figure 365. Netfinity Manager DMI browser

Figure 366 shows you detailed DMI information. The system will not accept any changes from this window. It is read-only.

	Win32 DMI Service Provider - ComponentID,				
	ID: 0001 - Class: DMTF ComponentID 001				
	📓 🐖 ID: Name: Value: T			Ту	
		1	Manufacturer	Intel Corporation	Dis
		2	Product	Win32 DMI Service Provider	Dis
		3	Version	Intel DMI Service Provider (Win32) V2.54	Dis
		4	Serial Number	unsupported	Dis
		5	Installation	19990811074634.000000-300	Dati
		6	Verify	component exists, functionality good	Inte
6       Verify       component exists, functionality good       Inte         Image: Second state       Image: Second state       Image: Second state       Image: Second state         Image: Second state       Image: Second state       Image: Second state       Image: Second state       Image: Second state         Image: Second state       Image: Second state       Image: Second state       Image: Second state       Image: Second state         Image: Second state       Image: S			►		

Figure 366. Netfinity Manager DMI browser information

#### 6.2.3 Event Action plans

Event management is the most comprehensive task and therefore the most difficult task to understand. This section shows you the different ways that Netfinity Director and Netfinity Manager handle alerts. Event management should let you identify, categorize, and automatically start actions in response to network events.

In Netfinity Manager, event and alert management consists of two main functions:

- 1. Maintaining a log of all events that are received and logged by the system management software.
- 2. Execute predefined responses or user-specific responses to specified events.

In Netfinity Director, event and alert management consists of three main topics:

- 1. Event/alert manager configuration This allows you to configure an action plan to handle the specific types of events and alerts and respond with specific actions.
- 2. Event/alert action plan This allows you to associate events and alerts with action plans and manage systems and devices.
- 3. Event/alert log browser This allows you to view the events and alerts that are saved in the log.

The Netfinity Director agent has built-in support for converting CIM events to Director events from sources such as UM Services and Windows NT, and forwarding them to the Netfinity Director server. CIM events can be filtered by selecting the appropriate event from the CIM category in the Event Filter builder.

Netfinity Director and Netfinity Manager have a different philosophy for event and alert management. For more information about Netfinity Director's core functions see 3.2.9, "Event management and logging" on page 104.

An event in Netfinity Director is an indication that something has occurred. The event manager of Netfinity Director allows you to build event action plans to try and resolve them. An event action plan at minimum consists of an event filter and an event action. An event filter describes a set of characteristics that will seek to match the conditions of the event to see if some action needs to be taken. For example, severity and event type are possible event filters and they are used to select a single event or a group of events. When applied to manage a system or a group in Netfinity Director, an event filter can be used to control which events can be viewed in the event log and which events trigger some specific action. Netfinity Director offers some predefined event filters. It is possible to create and define new filters, and you can also delete the predefined filters.

Events can be generated by:

- · The server itself
- The Netfinity Director tasks
- The native agents
- SNMP agents
- MPM agents
- Using genevent from the command line. Note that unlike genalert, events generated with genevent must have already been registered with the Netfinity Director Server using the Netfinity Director SDK before the server will listen for them.

More details can be found in 6.2.3.1, "Event Action Plan Builder in Netfinity Director" on page 249 and 6.2.3.3, "Create an Event Action Plan in Netfinity Director" on page 255. To see more information about log browsers see 6.2.3.5, "Netfinity Director - Event Log Browser and Alert Log Views" on page 261.

The base service that is at the core of the alerting function in Netfinity Manager is the Alert Manager. All alerts that are generated by the Netfinity Manager base service are sent to the Alert Manager. An alert function is an indication that something has occurred. The Alert Manager matches incoming alerts against one of its default or user-defined filters and if a match occurs, it carries out the appropriate action. These filters are called profiles by Netfinity Manager.

Alerts can be generated by:

- The server itself
- The client service for Netfinity Manager
- From the command line using genalert

More details can be found in 6.2.3.1, "Event Action Plan Builder in Netfinity Director" on page 249 and 6.2.3.3, "Create an Event Action Plan in Netfinity Director" on page 255. To see more information about log browsers refer to 6.2.3.5, "Netfinity Director - Event Log Browser and Alert Log Views" on page 261.

# 6.2.3.1 Event Action Plan Builder in Netfinity Director

The following section describes how to create an action plan and apply the plan to the system management systems or groups of managed systems. Click the **Event Action Plan Builder** pull-down menu as shown in Figure 367.

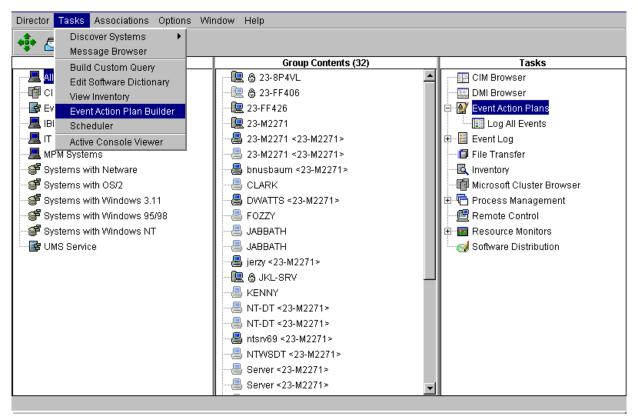


Figure 367. Netfinity Director Event Action Plans

If you are creating an event filter for the first time, the window that appears consists of only the predefined event filter supplied with the event management service as shown in the following figure:

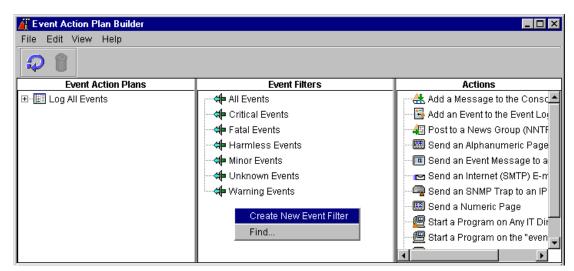


Figure 368. Netfinity Director creates Action Plan Builder

Right-click the **Event Filters** folder to see the context menu. Then click **Create New Event Filter**.

Figure 369 appears and shows the details for the event type. To expand this option deselect the **Any** box. The event type identifies sources of events within the network. The categories are organized in a tree format and they can contain several subcategories. You can select these categories to specify filtering criteria.

+ Event Filter	Builder : New 📃 🗆 🗙
File Help	
Ľ	
Event Type S	everity Day/Time Category Sender Name Extended Attributes
Any	CIM     Director     MPM Provider for IBM NetFinity     Windows NT Event Log     Paplication     Security     LSA     NetDDE Object     SC Manager     Security     Secur

Figure 369. Netfinity Director Action Plan Builder event types

Figure 370 identifies the priority of the event. Severity is used in action plans that require low or immediate attention. The different severity levels have the following meanings as described below:

Fatal

The application that issued the event has designated a severity level indicating that the source of the event has already caused the program to fail and should be resolved before the program is restarted.

Critical

The application that issued the event has assigned a severity level indicating that the source of the event may cause program failures and should be resolved immediately.

Minor

The application that issued the event has assigned a severity level indicating that the source of the event should not cause program failure but should be resolved.

Warning

The application that issued the event has assigned a severity level indicating that the source of the event is not necessarily problematic but may warrant investigation.

• Harmless

The application that issued the event has assigned a severity level indicating that the event is for information only.

• Unknown

The application that created that event did not assign a severity level.

• Event Fill	ter Builde	r:New
File Help		
Ľ		
Event Type	Severity	Day/Time Category Sender Name Extended Attributes
🗌 Any		
		Fatal
		🗹 Critical
		🗖 Minor
		🗖 Warning
		Harmless
		🗖 Unknown

Figure 370. Netfinity Director Action Plan Builder event severity

Select the severity level as needed by clicking the empty boxes. In Figure 371 you can select a specific day and time that the filter will be in effect.

📫 Event Filter Builder : New	
File Help	
Ľ	
Event Type Severity Day/Time Category Sen	der Name Extended Attributes
Any	Day of the Week Sunday

Figure 371. Netfinity Director Action Plan Builder date and time

Select the time schedule or check **Any** to mark all the times. In Figure 372 you can specify the resolution status of an event as one of the filter criteria. The status can be:

- Alert -Indicates the problem.
- Resolution Indicates that the problem has been resolved and is no longer an outstanding problem.

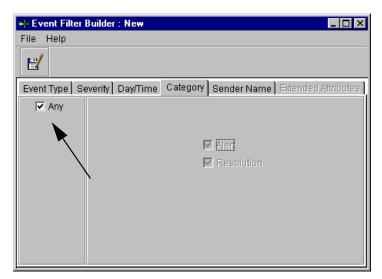


Figure 372. Netfinity Director Action Plan Builder category

Mark your input by checking **Any**. Figure 373 shows the Sender Name. It identifies the source from which the event was forwarded.

🗧 Event Filter	Builder : New 📃 🗆 🗙
File Help	
Ľ	
Event Type S	everity Day/Time Category Sender Name Extended Attributes
Any	23-FF426
	Delete Add

Figure 373. Netfinity Director Action Plan Builder Event Sender Name

Select your input and click **Add**. Figure 374 shows the Extended Attributes. It enables you to further qualify the filter criteria using additional keywords and values that can be associated with some categories of events.

	Select File -> Save as to save the input
Values 0	Save Event Filter     Enter a descriptive event filter name.     Any     OK Cancel

Figure 374. Netfinity Director Action Plan Builder Event Sender extended attributes

Select the keywords and values on which you want to filter. If no keywords are listed, that means that the Netfinity Director server has not been made aware of the selected event category. Save your input. Select **File -> Save as** and insert a unique name for the configuration.

Figure 375 shows the Event Log Task with the newly added folder you just created.

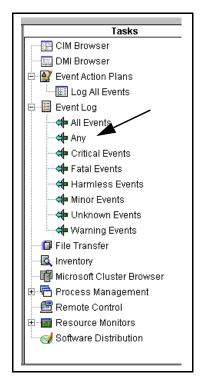


Figure 375. Netfinity Director Action Plan Builder added event

# 6.2.3.2 Netfinity Manager alerts

The Alert Manager is an extendable facility that allows the receiving and processing of application-generated alerts. These alerts can be a result of informational warnings or error messages from hardware or software sources.

Figure 376 shows the Netfinity Manager Alert Log.

You can define a profile (filter) that specifies that when an alert is generated, there is an action that will be performed only if some prerequisite condition is met.

Al	ert Log - NT-DT		
	-Selected Alert		
	Alert Text :		
	Type of Alert :	<b>T1 ( 1 ) .</b>	
	Severity :	Time of Alert :	
	Application ID:	Date of Alert :	
	Application Alert Type : Received From :	System Unique ID:	
	System Name:		
l			
	Alerts In Log		
	Time Date	Text	
	02:41:42p 08/03/1999 Erro	or Alert CPU temp: Monitor 'CP	'U Utilization' ha🔼
	Alert Log <u>V</u> iews Log sh	ows all alerts	
	Delete Print T	o File <u>R</u> efresh	<u>H</u> elp
	Print Prof	iles <u>A</u> ctions	Exit

Figure 376. Netfinity Manager alert

To define an action from an alert by using a profile, first click **Profiles**.

Figure 377 will pop up. This window shows all of the currently defined profiles. Within this window you can change a current profile, or you can create or delete a profile.

Alert Profiles - NT-DT
Profile List :
Access Granted Alerts
All Alerts
File Changed Alerts 🖌 🚽
File Created Alerts
File Deleted Alerts
Logical RAID Device Critical Alerts
Logical RAID Device Offline Alerts
Logical RAID Device Online Alerts
Physical RAID Drive Dead Alerts
<u>E</u> dit <u>N</u> ew <u>D</u> elete <u>H</u> elp D <u>o</u> ne

Figure 377. Netfinity Manager works with profiles

In this example we used the existing profile File Created Alerts. Select this by clicking it and click **Edit** to change the profile.

Figure 378 appears and you can make you changes to the profile. The fields within the profile are:

• Alert Type

This is the type of alert that is generated by Netfinity Manager. All alerts that Netfinity Manager handles will have a type.

Severity

Severities have a range from 0 to 7 where 0 is the highest priority. The severity is set by the administrator when he or she sets up the thresholds.

Application ID

This is a case sensitive alphanumeric identifier that identifies the application source for the alert. Each application should provide a unique ID.

• Application Alert Type

This is probably the most important value you need to consider. It is the type of problem that the application has, and it is assigned by the application that generated the alert.

Sender ID

This is the network address of the system that generated the alert. It is possible to add one or more Sender IDs in this field.

🗱 Profile Editor - NT-DT	×
Define By Options	
Alert Conditions:	
_ Alert Type:	Severity: Application ID:
✓ Any Alert <u>Type</u>	⊠ <u>Any</u>
Resolved for unknown re Resolved duplicate probl	6 ▲ 7 ▼ SvcMgr ▼
Application Alert Type:	Sender ID:
✓ Any	□ Any <u>S</u> ender
0 A 16 7 14 7	NETBIOS::23-FF426
Current Profile:	
Profile Name:	
File Changed Alerts	
Save	<u>C</u> ancel <u>H</u> elp

Figure 378. Netfinity Manager Profile Editor

Select your values and save the profile with your changes.

#### 6.2.3.3 Create an Event Action Plan in Netfinity Director

To create an action plan in Netfinity Director you first have to customize the Event Actions. This can be done from the Event Action Plan Builder window that is shown in Figure 379.

Right-click into a free space in the Event Actions column to get a list of options. Select **Create New Event Action Plan** and type in a name for it and press Enter. After you have done this, the name should appear in the Event Action Plan list. For our example, we used the name Admin Action Plan.

After you have done this you also have to create the actions. Right-click to get a list of the actions you want to customize. In our example we selected the action **Add message to the Console Ticker Tape**. Save the configuration by clicking **File -> Save As** and type in a name. After that is done, the newly created file name appears in the Actions column. In our case we created a file called Admin msg.

🞢 Event Action Plan Builder		
File Edit View Help		
<b>P</b>		
Event Action Plans	Event Filters	Actions
Admin Action Plan	All Events	📮 🏤 Add a Message to the Console T
🗄 📲 Log All Events	Any Any	Admin msg
🗄 🐗 All Events	🛶 Critical Events	Add an Event to the Event Log
Add an Event to the Event Lo	📫 Fatal Events	📲 Post to a News Group (NNTP)
	🐗 Harmless Events	📟 📟 Send an Alphanumeric Page (via
	Minor Events	🔤 📼 Send an Event Message to a Cor
	🛶 Unknown Events	📼 🖻 Send an Internet (SMTP) E-mail
	🛶 Warning Events 🖉 🥒	🗄 📼 Send an SNMP Trap to an IP Hos
· · · · ·	Customize Action : Admin msg	📟 Send a Numeric Page
Create New Event Action Plan	88	🖳 🖳 Start a Program on Any IT Directo
Find	Message	🖳 🕮 Start a Program on the "event" Sy
Expand All	ation and safe the data the system will shutdown in 20 min.	🔤 Start a Program on the IT Directo
Collapse All	User(s)	🗄 🖳 Start a Task on the "event" Syster
	(Example: User1, Administrator)	🖳 🖳 Inventory
	Admin NFD Srv	<u>۱</u>

Figure 379. Netfinity Director Event Actions

Select an event filter and drag it into the Event Action Plans pane on top of the action plan you want it to be associated with. The Event Filters folder will now appear under this column. You can see the result in Figure 380.

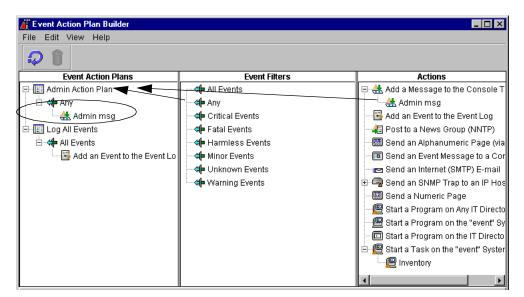


Figure 380. Netfinity Director Event Plan creation

If you want to add more than one event filter or action to Event Action Plans repeat the above steps. After you have defined the Event Action Plans, click **File** and **Save** to save the data.

**Note:** An Event Action Plan is inactive until you apply it to specific managed systems or groups.

Use the following procedure to activate the event action plan for a system. Double-click **Event Action Plans** in the Tasks pane of the Netfinity Director console main window shown in Figure 367 on page 249. Figure 381 should appear and show you that the plan's icon was added under the group that you had selected.

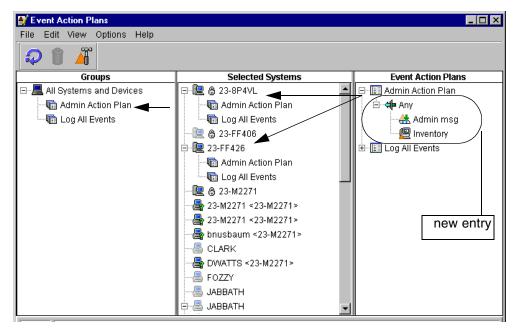


Figure 381. Netfinity Director Event Action Tasks applied

Select the desired plan in the Event Action Plans and drag it onto a system or a group. The desired event action plan will appear there also. After you have made your selection you can close the window with **File -> Close**.

**Note:** An event action plan is inactive until you apply it to specific managed systems.

If any of the specific events for the selected systems occur, they will be sent to the Netfinity Director server.

Figure 382 shows two types of error messages that were created from our example. One message shows up as a ticker tape display at the bottom of the console and the other shows up in the Message Browser interface. You can start the browser from the console by clicking **Tasks -> Message Browser**.

Director Tasks Associations Options Window Help								
💠 🖴 🚺 🔏								
Groups	Tasks							
All Systems and Devices	🖳 🗒 23-8P4VL	🔺 🔤 CIM Browser						
Clusters and Cluster Members		DMI Browser						
Event ITSO	🖳 🖳 23-FF426	🖶 🔐 Event Action Plans						
📃 🔜 IBM Netfinity(tm) Systems 📃	📃 🖳 🕲 23-M2271	🚽 🛛 🔠 Admin Action Plan 🗨						
em will shutdown in 20 min. 🔹 Please clo	se your application and safe the da	ta the system will shutdown in 20 min. 🔹 Please clo						
🙈 Message Browser								
File Message Help								
Message Informa	ation (1)	Event Ticker Message						
Message Title Di	ate Time Status	Please close your application and safe the						
Event Ticker Message 8/5/1	999 4:28:05 🛛 🧒	data the system will shutdown in 20 min.						
		Clear This Message						

Figure 382. Netfinity Director alert messages

Alerts can also be generated by using the command line interface. Type in genevent at the command prompt to access the Help menu.

# 6.2.3.4 Customizing Events in Netfinity Manager

Click the **Action** button from the Alert Log window as shown in Figure 383 to get the Alert Actions window.

Ale	ert Log - NT-DT	
Γ	-Selected Alert	
	Alert Text :	
	Type of Alert :	
	Severity :	Time of Alert :
	Application ID:	Date of Alert :
	Application Alert Type : Received From :	System Unique ID:
	System Name:	
L	•	
[	Alerts In Log	
	Time Date	Text
	02:41:42p 08/03/1999 Error Aler	t CPU temp: Monitor 'CPU Utilization' ha 🗾
	-	
		, _
	Alert Log <u>V</u> iews Log shows a	all alerts
	Delete Print To File	e Refresh 🖌 Help
	Print Profiles	<u>A</u> ctions E <u>x</u> it

Figure 383. Netfinity Manager alert actions

The Alert Actions window in Figure 384 shows you several different actions. You can edit existing actions, create new ones,or delete existing actions.

The action Forward to MPM service is listed here since Netfinity Director was installed on the same system as the Netfinity Manager. Netfinity Director installs the MPM API service during its installation process. The reason for this is that Netfinity Director can handle some of the Netfinity Manager alerts through the MPM API service.

Alert Actions - NT-DT	×
Available Actions :	
Forward to MPM service Add alert to log file Notify user with pop-up	
<u>E</u> dit <u>N</u> ew <u>D</u> elete <u>H</u> elp D <u>o</u> ne	

Figure 384. Netfinity Manager alert window

In this case we selected an existing Alert Action (Forward to MPM service) and clicked **Edit.** 

Figure 385 shows you all the options that were selected. You can edit the Alert Type, Severity, Application ID, Application Alert Type, and Sender ID fields. The descriptions for these profiles are shown in Figure 378 on page 255. You can also

select the action to forward this alert to an MPM service through the network or for it to cause a pop-up window on a user's display.

Real Action Editor - NT-DT	×						
Bind To Options							
Alert Conditions:							
_ Alert Type:	Severity: Application ID:						
☑ Any Alert Type	🗆 Any 👘 Any						
Resolved duplicate problem	6 ▲ 7 ▼ SvcMgr ▼						
Application Alert Type:	Sender ID:						
✓ Any	Any <u>S</u> ender						
0 NETBIOS::23-FF426							
Action Definition:							
Action:	IPM service 🔹						
Forward to M	PM service						
	ondition ' <p1>' for sending system</p1>						
Add Event to Event Log							
	Send DMI Event through DMI Service Layer						
Add alert to I Forward aler	og tile t through network <p1> to system <p2> 🗾</p2></p1>						
Sa⊻e	<u>C</u> ancel <u>H</u> elp						

Figure 385. Netfinity Manager alert configuration

Select your changes and save the configuration.

Alerts can also generated by using the command line interface. Type genalert at the command prompt to access the Help menu as shown below:

GENALERT /T:"text" < /APP:id\_name > < /PRI:<0...7> > </TYPE:sssttt> </ATYPE:hexnum >'

#### where:

/T:"text"	Defines the text message describing the alert				
/APP:id_name	Defines the application ID for the alert (1-8 characters)				
/SEV:<07>	Define	es the severity of the alert (0 = max, 7=min)			
/TYPE:sssttt	Defines the standard type of alert. The sss field desc ID of the alert:				
	UNK SYS DSK NET OS_ APP DEV	Unknown System Disk or DASD Network Operating System Application Device			

SEC Security

The ttt field describes the class of the alert:

UNK	Unknown
FLT	Fault or Failure
ERR	Error
WRN	Warning

#### INF Information

/ATYPE:hexnum Defines the application-specific alert type as a hexadecimal

# value between 0000 and FFFF.

## 6.2.3.5 Netfinity Director - Event Log Browser and Alert Log Views

The event log lets you view the events that have been received and processed by the Netfinity Director server. You can start the event log from the console window as you see in Figure 367 on page 249. Drag the Event Log icon onto the system or system group to start the event error log as you see in Figure 386. The left pane of the window shows all of the event filter information such as Event Type, Severity, Date, Time, Category and Sender Name. In addition, the system identification is also listed in the window. The right pane shows the Event Details. This pane lists the events that have been received during the period shown in the caption. The default is 24 hours.

📱 Event Log (All Events)									
File Edit	View Options	s Help							
<b>Q</b>									
	Events (30	l) - Last 24 Ho	ours			Event Details			
Date	Time	Event Type	Event Text	Sys	Keywords	Values			
8/5/1999 8/5/1999 8/5/1999 8/5/1999 8/5/1999 8/5/1999 8/5/1999 8/5/1999 8/5/1999 8/5/1999 8/5/1999	4:49:13 PM 4:47:04 PM 4:47:04 PM 4:44:13 PM 4:39:13 PM 4:39:13 PM 4:39:14 PM 4:29:14 PM 4:22:43 PM 4:22:43 PM 4:22:41 PM 4:22:41 PM	CIM.Windo CIM.Windo CIM.Windo CIM.Windo CIM.Windo CIM.Windo CIM.Windo CIM.Windo CIM.Windo CIM.Windo CIM.Windo CIM.Windo CIM.Windo	One of the One of the	JKL JKL JKL JKL JKL	Date Time Event Type Event Text System Name Severity Category Group Name Sender Name Hive RootPath	8/5/1999 4:34:13 PM CIM.Windows Registry.Software Tree Changed One of the registry keys under the root HKEY_L JKL-SRV Warning Alert All Systems and Devices JKL-SRV HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE Software			
0/5/4.000	4-10-14 DM	CIM Windo	One of the		•				

Figure 386. Netfinity Director Event Log

Select any event to see its event details. For each event log entry you can create separate definitions. Figure 387 shows the context menu that appears when you right mouse click. As the event log grows in size, or if you want to track only specific events, you can set it up so that the view only shows entries that match your filter.

📕 Event Lo	og				_ 🗆 ×		
File Edit	View Options	s Help					
E\	/ents (100) - L	ast 24 Hours	$\square$		Event Details		
Date	Time	Event Type	Eve	Keywords	Values		
8/5/1999	6:49:13 PM	CIM.Windo	One ( 🔺	Date	8/5/1999		
8/5/1999	6:44:13 PM	Windo	One c	Time	6:39:13 PM		
8/5/1999	0.204.2.014	Windo	One c	Event Type	CIM.Windows Registry.Software Tr		
8/5/1999	Create a Filt	er Windo	One c	Event Text	One of the registry keys under the r		
8/5/1999	Delete	Windo	One c	System Name	JKL-SRV		
8/5/1999	Find	Windo	One c	Severity	Warning		
8/5/1999	Sort	Windo	One c	Category	Alert		
8/5/1999	Hide Colum	n Windo	One c	Group Name Sender Name	All Systems and Devices JKL-SRV		
8/5/1999	6:18:01 PM	CIM.Windo	One c	Senuer Name	JAC-BRY		
8/5/1999	6:14:13 PM	CIM.Windo	One c	Hive	HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE		
8/5/1999	6:13:41 PM	CIM.Windo	One c	RootPath	Software		
8/5/1999	6:13:41 PM	CIM.Windo	One c				
8/5/1999	6:09:56 PM	CIM.Windo	One c				
8/5/1999	6:09:56 PM	CIM.Windo	One c				
8/5/1999	6:09:56 PM	CIM.Windo	One c				
8/5/1999	6:09:56 PM	CIM.Windo	One c				
0/5/4 000	8-00-66 PM	CIMMAindo	<u>∼</u>	•	I▶		

Figure 387. Netfinity Director event detail information

Select the event with a right mouse click as shown in the above figure and perform your changes.

Figure 388 shows the alert that came from the Netfinity Manager system. The Netfinity Director can manage the MPM API service in the Netfinity Manager systems. For more information refer to 6.1, "Running Netfinity Director and Netfinity Manager together" on page 235.

🖓 🔋								
		E	vents (6) - La	ast 24 Hours				Event Details
Date	Time	Event Type	Event Text	System Na	Severity	Category	Group Nan	Keywords
4/1999	4:03:42 PM	MPM Provi	User ID '≺p	23-M2271	Harmless	Alert		Date
4/1999	3:59:34 PM	MPM Provi	User ID '≺p	23-M2271	Harmless	Alert		Time
4/1999	3:50:54 PM	Director.To	System 'TP	TPIV02 <2	Harmless	Alert		Event Type
4/1999	2:01:36 PM	MPM Provi	User ID '≺p	23-M2271	Harmless	Alert		Event Text
4/1999	11:50:49 AM	Director.To	System 'Sy	SystemNa	Harmless	Resolution		System Nam
4/1999	10:50:49 AM	Director.To	System Wtr	wtr05282 <	Harmless	Resolution		Severity Category
								Alert Text Standard Ale Application IE Application A Time and Da Severity System Nam System Uniq P1 P2 P3

Figure 388. Netfinity Director MPM API

## 6.2.3.6 Netfinity Manager Alert Log

As the alert log grows in size, or you want to track specific alerts, you may choose to view only the specific alerts that you want to see in the Alert Log Views window. To do that, click the **Alert Manager** icon in the Netfinity Manager main window and select **Alert Log Views** as shown in Figure 389:

Alert Log - NT-DT			
Selected Alert			
Alert Text :			
Type of Alert :			
Severity :		me of Alert :	
Application ID:		nte of Alert :	
Application Alert T	ype: Sy	/stem Unique ID:	
Received From :			
System Name:			
Alerts In Log			
Time Dat	e	Text	
08:43:35p 08/04	1/1999 The following	file has changed: 'E	:\NFMgralert.txt
	, 1/1999 The following		
	3/1999 Error Alert CP		
		•	
			$\checkmark$
•			•
	-		
Alert Log <u>V</u> iews	Log shows all a	erts	
Delete	Pri <u>n</u> t To File	<u>R</u> efresh	<u>H</u> elp
Print	Pr <u>o</u> files	Actions	E <u>×</u> it

Figure 389. Netfinity Manager Alert Log

To enable View By Time and Date click the **Enable** check box in Figure 390. You can now define your changes for the time and date ranges.

To enable View By Profiles click the **Enable** check box in the View By Profiles group. Select the profiles that interest you in the Active Profiles list box by selecting the **<- Activate** or **Deactivate ->** button. Click **Refresh** to save your input.

Alert Log Views - NT-DT			×					
_ View By Time and Date—								
C Last Ho <u>u</u> r	• Time Range	Start Time	12:00:00p 📫					
O <u>L</u> ast 24	>	End Time	01:00:00p					
	O Date Range	Start Date	08/05/1999 <b>*</b>					
E <u>n</u> able		End Date	08/05/1999					
View By Profiles								
Logical RAID Device Critic Power-On Error Detect Err Predictive Failure Analysis	or Alerts Phys s Alerts Phys Powe	ical RAID Driv ical RAID Driv	ve Standby Alerts					
✓ Enable Deactive	vate ->	<- <u>A</u> ctivate						
<u>R</u> efresh	<u>D</u> one		<u>H</u> elp					

Figure 390. Netfinity Manager Alert Log Views

## 6.2.4 File Transfer

This section describes the difference between the Netfinity Director and Netfinity Manager file transfer task.

Figure 391 shows you how to start a file transfer operation to another system within the network by using Netfinity Director's file transfer function.

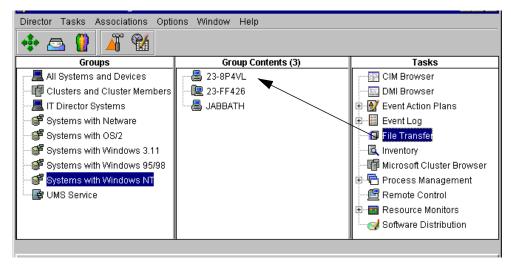


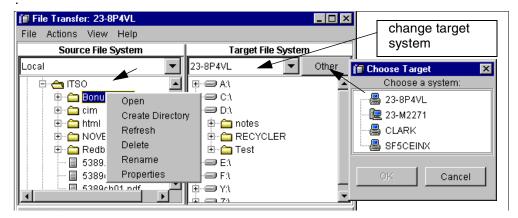
Figure 391. Netfinity Director file transfer task

You can use drag and drop to move the file transfer task to the desired system or right mouse click the system folder.

After the drag and drop has completed, the file transfer function shown in Figure 392 will appear and show the disk accesses for both systems. By clicking the field where the target server name is shown you can change the target system to

another system. By clicking the folder **Other**, the system offers more target systems. All systems within the environment are listed in this folder.

If you click the right mouse button on a directory folder you get a context menu with some additional options.



Netfinity Director implements the file transfer function with a Java GUI.

Figure 392. Netfinity Director file transfer function

Figure 393 shows the way to start a file transfer when you use Netfinity Manager. This function is not supported as a group function on Netfinity Manager, but it is on Netfinity Director. The first step is to start the Remote System Manager and then select **System Group Management** where your systems are listed. Within this Group you can select only one of the systems at the same time. For access to each system a security logon window appears and requires your input. If you wanted to write a script you could use the Netfinity Manager command line interface, but it would be a tedious task.

🙁 Netfinity Service Manager	
System Group Management Group Options Help	
a.a.	rt Manager Capacity Manager
All	ection Manager Event Scheduler
	●
Power-On Error Detect Process	Manager Remote System Manager
	<u>A</u>
😩 Group 'All' (20 systems)	<u>_ □ ×</u> h Manager
<u>S</u> ystem <u>V</u> iew <u>H</u> elp	
System Name	etwork Address Sy:
OSCJR	24.106.153
Server Server, Manager)	24.106.158
/ lociver, manageri	
SF5CEINX (Manager)	24.106.29
SF5CEINX	

Figure 393. Netfinity Manager access to a remote system

After you log in the menu for the remote system appears and you can click the **File Transfer** icon. The resulting window is shown in Figure 394. It shows the source and the target system. The target system can't be changed with Netfinity Manager, but when you use the same function with Netfinity Director you can make a change. You can perform the file transfer by using some function keys that are shown below:

File Transfer (Server)		
LOCAL: NTWSDT	Transfer Mode © Copy	REMOTE: Server
Drive/volume D:	O <u>M</u> ove /	Drive/volume D:
Directories <u>A</u> ll Dirs	Directory <u>N</u> ested	Directories All Dirs
notes RECYCLER	>>> S <u>e</u> nd Dir >>>	install ITSO
Test	<< Receive Dir <<	RECYCLER Safety
	Synchronize	temp-paint tools
	Dele <u>t</u> e Dir	
Files All Files	File	Files All Files
	>>> Send File>>>	5389ch01.pdf
	<< <u>R</u> eceive File<<	Login-ITSO.bat
	Delete File	
File Type *.*	Detailed Inf <u>o</u>	File Type *.*
iu 🔲 Netfinity Se 🍏 System Gro 👹 G	roup 'All' ( 🌐 🄲 Netfinity Se	File Transfe 📰 Paint Shop

Figure 394. Netfinity Manager File Transfer

Netfinity Manager doesn't support the Java GUI and can't use the drag and drop function either. Therefore, you need many more steps to perform a file transfer when you use Netfinity Manager.

#### 6.2.5 Inventory

This section describes the advantage of the Netfinity Director Task Inventory versus the Netfinity Manager Task System Information function. Descriptions for the base functions of this task can be found in 3.2.1, "Inventory management" on page 75.

We show you how to get inventory information from both system management tools. By using Netfinity Director you get more functions than you get with Netfinity Manager. These functions are listed below and will be shown in this example:

- · Group operations
- · Create your own queries
- Store query as an HTML format

Figure 395 shows how to start the Inventory task:

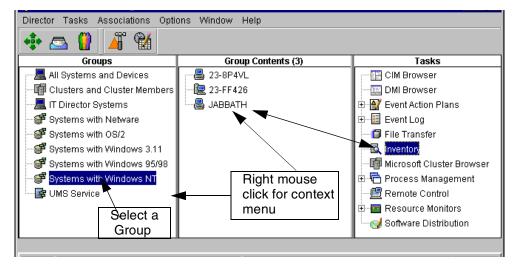


Figure 395. Inventory task in Netfinity Director

Netfinity Director provides the ability to select queries by systems or by groups. To start a query select a system from the column Group Contents or from the column Groups in the Netfinity console main menu. To start the request for the group of all Windows NT systems we selected **Systems with Windows NT**.

To show the advantage of the group operation we ran a simple inventory task. This request gets hardware, software, and BIOS information. Figure 396 shows the summary for all of the Windows NT systems. Now you can select the systems by holding down the Shift button and clicking the left mouse button.

Inventory Service		
File Help		
Systems Selected	Inventory Status	select the
23-FF426	Collection completed successfully	systems
23-8P4VL	Collection completed successfully	

Figure 396. Query group selection

Select the systems that you want to use. Right-click and select **View Inventory** to start the query.

In Figure 397 all the detailed information for all of the selected systems is listed. In our case the information is shown for two systems. In the left column the systems are listed by system name. The other columns list the information that we had selected in the query.

Name (Sys	Type (Disk)	Total Size (	Physical M	Name (Op	Version (O
23-FF426	CDROM	0	196008	Windows N	4.0
23-FF426	FLOPPY	0			
23-FF426	HARDDISK	8883945			
23-8P4VL	CDROM	0	130472	Windows N	4.0
23-8P4VL	FLOPPY	0			
23-8P4VL	HARDDISK	6297480			

Figure 397. Query listed by groups

Figure 398 shows a picture of the Netfinity Manager GUI. We selected a group with dedicated systems, which are shown below. We see the systems, but it is not possible to summarize these systems to start a query. Each system has to be selected separately for each query.

<b>Group 'My</b> System View	Dt' (4 systems) Help		
NTWSDT	Server	Server	Server
(Manager)	(Server, Manager)	(Server, Manager)	(Server, Manager)

Figure 398. Netfinity Manager group

Select a system and start it by double-clicking the mouse.

The system shows the task menu. You can select the icon **System Information**, which has almost the same information as Netfinity Director. Netfinity Manager can't change any of the fields in the query. That means that if System Information is started, it always provides the same types of information. For example, Adapter Information, BIOS Information, and Disk Information. You can't preselect specific data fields if you only want to view a few of them. See Figure 399. Netfinity Director allows you to customize your queries with the Build Customer Query. Figure 400 shows a procedure that you can use to create your own query.

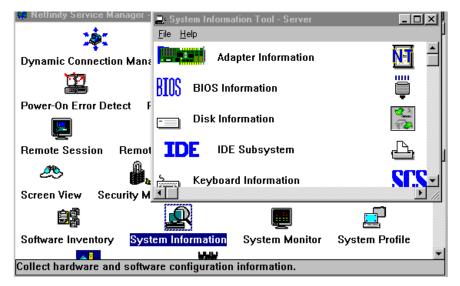


Figure 399. Netfinity Manager system information

Figure 400 is the Netfinity Director menu, which shows you how to build your own query. It allows you to select each of the Available Criteria functions separately and you can break it down further by selecting the functions on the submenus. This means that you can define very specific queries to give you the information you want and nothing more.

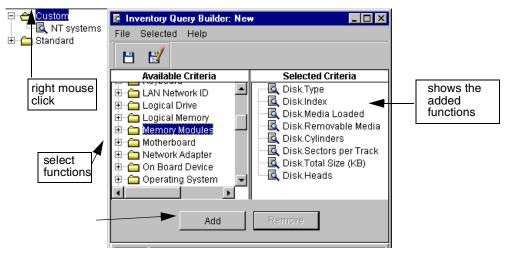


Figure 400. Build your own query on Netfinity Director

Select the **Customer** folder and right mouse click **Select Build Customer Query**. Select the items to build your own query and click **Add**. You can repeat this step until you have included all of the functions that you want. Select **File -> Save as** and enter a title.

Figure 401 and Figure 402 show the formats and databases where you can store the output from the queries. Netfinity Director lets you save the query output in spreadsheet (CSV) format or in HTML format so that you can access the information with a standard Web browser. That provides you with the opportunity to access this data from anywhere with a Web browser without requiring any special software.

Export HTML Format		×
File Name	Directories:	ок
NTQuery	D/\	Cancel
	<ul> <li>DA</li> <li>install</li> <li>ITSO</li> <li>RECYCLER</li> <li>Safety</li> <li>temp-paint</li> <li>tools</li> </ul>	
List Files of Type	Drives:	Destination:
*.htm		Local 🔻

Figure 401. Store query by Netfinity Director

Netfinity Manager stores the collected information in three file formats as shown in Figure 402. HTML format is not an option, so you can't view the data from a Web browser.

		Adapter Information		Operating System Information
BIOS	BIOS	S Information		Parallel and Serial Port Information
· ID	Disl E	Database Selection - NTWSDT Export Database Information to a Fill Export to a Lotus Notes Database. Export Database Information via OD		
5	Кеу			
	Мег	☑ Include System Profile Information	I	
	Μος	Include Component CSD Level (SY	SLE	/EL) Information
Ò	Μοι	<u>0</u> K		Cancel

Figure 402. Store query by Netfinity Manager

# 6.2.6 Microsoft Cluster Browser

Netfinity Manager supports the Cluster Management service and it is startable from an icon as shown in Figure 403. That icon is available in the Netfinity Manager main window only when the MSCS (Microsoft Cluster Server)

Administrator is installed on your system. It includes the MSCS notes and any remote cluster administrator consoles that are configured.



Figure 403. Netfinity Manager Cluster Manager

Double-click it to start the Netfinity Cluster service. In Netfinity Director the Cluster Manager is divided into two tasks:

- 1. Cluster systems management
- 2. Software rejuvenation

These functions and services are included in the server Life Cycle Tools and are explained in 4.2.3, "Cluster Manager" on page 181.

#### 6.2.7 Process management

A key feature of Netfinity Director and Netfinity Manager is the ability to manage individual processes on remote systems. The Process Management (Netfinity Director) or Process Manager (Netfinity Manager) function allows the administrator to view and manipulate all applications and processes. The system administrator will be able to set monitors for a specific process or application so that if an application or process terminates, an event (alert) will be generated. That means if a process stops or starts, you can configure the process management or process manager to send an alert. Based on the contents of the alert you can run a script that can do anything from restarting the application to notifying the help desk. This section shows the difference between process management in Netfinity Director and process manager in Netfinity Manager. For base information on this topic see 3.2.9, "Event management and logging" on page 104.

#### 6.2.7.1 Netfinity Director

Figure 404 shows the process management window on a Windows NT system. One way to start the process management is to drag the process management icon from the right Task pane on top of the system that you want to manage. This procedure is shown in Figure 146 on page 96. This window provides information about the Name of the task, Process ID, User, Thread count, Priority, Monitored and Memory usage. A detailed description of these fields can be found in Table 4 on page 98.

File Actions Monitors Help						
Appl Execute Command Device Service	es					
Close Application	Process ID	User	Thread Count	Priority	Monitored	Mer
C:WVNETFININFNTSVC.EXE	191	SYSTEM	2	Normal	No	28K
C:\WVNETFIN\netfbase.exe	245	SYSTEM	6	High	No	1200
C:\WNETFIN\schbase.exe	239	SYSTEM	2	High	No	400K
C:\WNETFIN\pfab.exe	84	SYSTEM	3	High	No	200K
C:\WVNETFIN\alertmgr.exe	172	manfred	2	High	No	220K
C:\WNETFIN\monbase.exe	140	SYSTEM	2	High	No	1024
C:\WNETFIN\shrbase.exe	376	SYSTEM	3	High	No	200K
C:WVNETFIN\CMBASE.EXE	410	SYSTEM	3	High	No	708K
C:\WNETFIN\monaolb.exe	267	SYSTEM	6	High	No	216K
C:WVNETFIN/webfin.exe	421	SYSTEM	3	High	No	248K
C:\WNETFIN\NFAPPCCS.EXE	428 /	SYSTEM	3	Normal	No	224K
C:\TivoliWg\bin\twgrunw.exe	476	manfred	37	Normal	No	2426
C:\Program Files\VP Buddy\VPBuddy.exe	23/1	manfred	4	Normal	No	740K
C:\notes\NLNOTES.EXE	445	manfred	3	Normal	No	1133
C:\Program Files\Adobe\FrameMaker5.5\Fr	494	manfred	2	Normal	No	9400
C:\Acrobat3\Exchange\AcroEx32.exe	507	manfred	2	Normal	No	7564
C:\TivoliWg\bin\twgrunvm.exe	503	monfrod	0	Normal	No	1272
C:\TivoliWg\Bin\twgprocb.exe	522	m Add To	Monitors	High	No	2352
C:\WINNT\System32\clock.exe	517	n Close /	Application	Normal	Yes	420K
C:\WVNETFIN\procbase.exe	532	SYSTEM	2	High	No	2048

Figure 404. Netfinity Director Process Management

From this window you can take different actions. It allows you to start applications from the menu task bar. Click **Actions** and you get a window where you can type in your input, as shown in Figure 405. In our example, we wanted to start the application clock. After starting this application it appeared in the monitor window as shown in Figure 404.

To monitor this application right mouse click the task that is shown in Figure 404. The context menu that appears offers you the choice to close this running application or to add this to your monitor list for further management. Select **Add To Monitors**. Click **Monitors** from the menu task bar and select **Process Monitor**. A window should appear that shows you all the tasks that are selected to monitor.

🎬 Execute Comma	nd - 23-FF426 📃 🗆 🗙
File Help	
Command Login	Output
Command	clock
🗖 Wait For Finish	
Timeout (Seconds)	0

Figure 405. Netfinity Director Execute Command

Type in the application that you want to start. In this window you can select when the task should create an event. This can be each time that the task is started, stopped, or fails.

🖷 Process Monitors: 23-FF426					
File Edit Help					
Program Name	Start	Stop	Fail	Timeout (S	
CLOCK.EXE				0	
SERVICES.EXE				0	

Figure 406. Netfinity Director Process Monitors

Select when the event should be sent and click the boxes that reflect the condition you wish to monitor. Then save the configuration information by clicking **File -> Save**.

The event log shows all the events that are monitored. In this case, we see the clock event (after the application has started, stopped or fails at least one time). Figure 407 shows this flow:

Event Lo	n: 23-	FF426								
File Edit V		Options	Help							
<b>Q</b>										
				Even	ts (7) - Last 2	24 Hours				
Date		Time	Event Type	Event Text	System Na	Severity	Cat	egory	Group Name	Send
8/6/1999	6:50:	26 PM	Director.Dir	Monitor 'PM	23-FF426	Harmless	Alert			23-FF
8/6/1999	5:28:	31 PM	Director.Dir	Monitor 'PM	23-FF426	Harmless	Alert	Creat	te a Filter	23-FF
8/6/1999	5:27:	17 PM	Director.Dir	Monitor 'PM	23-FF426	Harmless	Alert	Delet	e	23-FF
8/6/1999	5:26:	36 PM	Director.Dir	Monitor 'PM	23-FF426	Harmless	Alert	Find.		23-FF
8/6/1999	4:57:	22 PM	Director.Dir	Monitor 'PM	23-FF426	Harmless	Alert	Sort	•	23-FF
8/6/1999	4:47:	36 PM	Director.Dir	Monitor 'PM	23-FF426	Warning	Alert		Column	23-FF
8/6/1999	4:46:	:37 PM	Director.Dir	Monitor 'PM	23-FF426	Harmless	Alert	Thue		23-FF
					Event Detail	s				
Keywords		Values						/		
Date 8/6/1999 Time 6:50:26 PM Event Type Director.Director Agent.Process Monitors.Process Alert.Process Started.clock.exe Event Text Monitor 'PMON: CLOCK.EXE Start' Changed: 'CLOCK.EXE' has changed values for 0:00:00. New' System Name 23-FF426 Severity Harmless										

Figure 407. Netfinity Manager event log inclusive monitor

There are additional choices you can make from this window. You can create a filter, delete the event, and more. Use the right mouse button to see all the options.

#### 6.2.7.2 Netfinity Manager

Double-click the **Process Manager** icon in the Netfinity Manager main window to start the process manager. Figure 409 on page 274 shows the process manager window that provides information about the Program Name, Process ID, User ID, Num. Threads, and Priority.

From this window you can also take actions that are similar to the ones that Netfinity Director can take. It allows you to start, close, and monitor applications from this window as you can see in Figure 409 on page 274.

t							
	nity Process Manager - Server						
<u> </u>	System Help mmand Name	Process ID	Userl	D	Num. Threads	Priority	
/ -	Application Ap	o be executed.	×	ed	6	Normal	<b></b>
32	C:\WINNT\Sys		re	ed	1	Normal	
32	C:\WINNT\Sys <u>Bun</u> <u>Cance</u>	l <u>H</u> elp	ſ		2	Normal	
32	C:\WINNT\System32\drivers\trcl	00000050h			1	Normal	
32	C:\WINNT\System32\IIssrv.exe	00000088h			9	Normal	
32	C:\WINNT\system32\Isass.exe	00000031h			13	Normal	
32	C:\WINNT\System32\nddeagnt.e	0000006Ch	manfre	ed	1	Normal	
32	C:\WINNT\System32\NILaunch.e	000000D7h	manfre	ed	1	Normal	
32	C:\WINNT\system32\ntvdm.exe	000001A4h	manfre	ed	2	Normal	
32	C:\WINNT\System32\pcssfrrx.e>	0000006Eh			4	Normal	
32	c:\winnt\system32\pstores.exe	000000CAh			4	Normal	
32		d Process Alert.			6	Normal	
32	C:\WINNT\system32\serv	se Application			19	Normal	
32	C:\WINNT\system32\spoolss.ex	0000004Ch			9	Normal	
	Þ	<u>र</u>					

Figure 408. Netfinity Manager Process Manager

To start new tasks from this window, select **Process -> Run command**. A window pops up and you can type in the task or application that you want to start. To close a task, right mouse click the task and select **Close Application**.

To monitor the task, click **Add Process Alert** in the context menu. The system prompts you with a window similar to the following:

_	<mark>ity Process Manager</mark> <u>S</u> ystem <u>H</u> elp							
	Program Name	Process ID	User ID	Num. Threads		i		
32	\??\C:\WINNT\system32\winlogon.(	00000023h	Add Proce		× NT\System32\cloc			
32	C:\PROGRA~1\Navnt\alertsvc.exe	0000016Eh						
3Z 3Z 3Z	C:\PROGRA~1\Navnt\navapsvc.exe	00000066h	Alert Sev	Alert Severity:				
32	C:\PROGRA~1\Navnt\npssvc.exe	00000081h	Ger 🗹 Ger					
32	C:\Program Files\IBM\UMS\httpser	0000004Fh	Ger Ger					
32	C:\Program Files\Intel\Alert on LAN	000000AAh	Execution time-out:					
32	C:\Program Files\Navnt\navapw32.	00000107h	🗹 Not	ify				
32	C:\Program Files\Personal Commu	00000057h	<u>0</u> K	<u>C</u> ance	<u>H</u> elp			
32	C:\Program Files\Real\Rea		Manfred	7	Normal			
32	C:\TivoliWg\Bin\TWGAPPCS.EXE	0000013Dh	Manfred	3	Normal			
32	C:\Tivoli₩g\Bin\twgengw.e×e	000000A8h	Manfred	24	Normal			
32	C:\TivoliWg\Bin\twgescli.exe	000000D5h	Manfred	10	High			
32	C:\TivoliWg\Bin\twgipc.exe	000000A0h	Manfred	7	High			
32	C:\TivoliWg\Bin\twgipcsv.exe	0000009Ch	Manfred	2	Normal			
	F	4				▼		

Figure 409. Netfinity Manager add process alert

In the Add Process Alert window select the severity of the alert and indicate when it should occur. Then click **OK**. The task is now configured to send an alert.

To get an overview of the alerts that are being monitored, click **Process -> Process Alerts**. The system will prompt you with a window that is similar to Figure 410. From this window you can change any configuration or start one with a double-click of the task.

Netfinity Process Manager								
Process	<u>System</u> <u>H</u> elp							
	Program Name	Process ID	User ID	Num. Threads	Priority			
	\??\C:\WINNT\system32\winlogon.u	00000023h		2	High			
32	C:\PROGRA~1\Navnt\alertsvc.exe	0000016Eh	SYSTEM	16	Normal			
32	Process Alerts			×	Normal			
5	Alert Conditions:				Normal			
	Termination of 'MONITOR' Start and termination of 'C:\\	VINNT\SYST	EM32\CLO	CK.EXE'	Normal			
32			-					
32					Normal			
32		Idle						
32		Normal						
37					Normal			
32	<u>A</u> dd <u>E</u> dit <u>E</u>	<u>)</u> elete	<u>H</u> elp	E <u>x</u> it	Normal			
	C:\Tivoli₩g\Bin\twgengw.exe	000000A8h	Manfred	24	Normal			
32 32 32 32 32	C:\TivoliWg\Bin\twgescli.exe	000000D5h	Manfred	10	High			
32	C:\TivoliWg\Bin\twgipc.exe	000000A0h	Manfred	7	High			
32	C:\TivoliWg\Bin\twgipcsv.exe	0000009Ch	Manfred	2	Normal			
•	Þ	4			▼ ▶			

Figure 410. Netfinity Manager Process Manager

#### 6.2.8 Remote control

Both Netfinity Director and Netfinity Manager support remote control. There are no big differences between the way they support it. Netfinity Director has an easy way to start it by using drag and drop and Netfinity Manager requires you to click through several icons to access the remote system. Start the Remote System Manager then select a System Group Management icon where your systems are included. Within that group you can select one of the systems (double-click) and you have to perform a logon to access the system. More information about the base functions can be found in 3.2.6, "Remote control" on page 87.

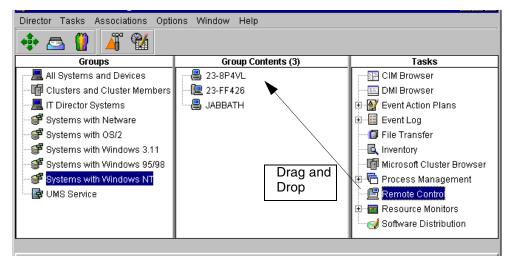


Figure 411. Netfinity Director Remote Control

Both System Management tools have the same security function. They both require user authorization for window access. The remote windows of both are nearly identical and the functions on the action menu bar at the top of the Remote Control window are also similar. The only difference is that the Netfinity Director window has a Tab key and Function keys 1-12 on the bottom of the Remote Control window. The Tab key and Function keys can't be passed through a data stream to the remote system from your keyboard, so they are displayed in the Remote Control window. During an active session you can click these keys to perform the same functions as pressing the keys on the keyboard. The Function keys are shown in Figure 412:

<u>File</u> di <u>C</u> ontents											
	<u>In General Help</u> Active Monitor Suspend Terminate hot key	<u>ndex</u>	*								
Start	🤲 🔲 Netfinity Suppo	ort Program	- 🔣 C	:\TivoliWg	)\Bin\twgr	mtw	RWC - CI	ient Active	- ALT	Remote	Contro 🗸
Tab	F1 F2	F3	F4	F5	F6	F7	F8	F9	F10	F11	► F12

Figure 412. Netfinity Director Remote Control task bar

To change the status (Active or Monitor), select **Session -> Active** (or **Monitor**) from the top of the Remote Control window.

# 6.2.9 Resource Monitors

This section describes the differences for the resource monitoring service in Netfinity Director and Netfinity Manager. The Netfinity Director resource monitoring task allows you to monitor the Netfinity Director agents and the systems with UM Services installed. Netfinity Manager monitors the Netfinity Manager and Netfinity Services systems. For more information see 3.2.4, "Resource monitoring" on page 80.

The following topics show where the differences are:

- Adding attributes to manage a system or a system group
- · Setting monitor thresholds
- Adding the ticker

Figure 413 shows how to start the Resource Monitor Task to add attributes with Netfinity Director:

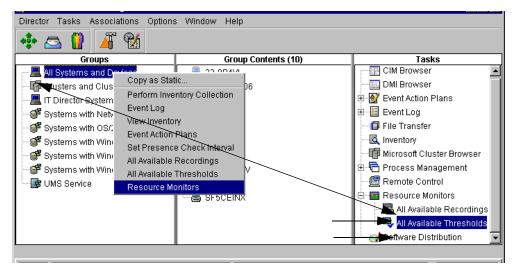


Figure 413. Netfinity Director Resource Monitors

Perform a right mouse click for the system or system group to see the systems that are to be managed. In our case we selected the folder **All Systems and Devices** to show that Netfinity Director can handle the group function for this task. Netfinity Manager does not support the group function. In Netfinity Director, a context menu appears after you right mouse click. Select **Resource Monitors**. You can also use the drag and drop function to start this function. If you select All Available Recordings, you get a listing of all recordings that are currently defined for any of the known managed systems or groups. Using the folder All Available Thresholds enables you to view a list of all thresholds that are currently defined for any of the known managed systems or groups.

The right pane in Figure 414 displays the selected systems on the top row of the window. In that pane, the left-most column shows the corresponding attributes. You can use the drag and drop function to add attributes. When you add an attribute the system starts to collect monitor data. In our example, we collected data for Disk, Memory, CPU Utilization, and Process Count as shown in Figure 414 on page 278.

ile View Options Help					_			
Available Resources		Selected Resources						
🗄 🚖 Director Agent 👘 🔼	Selected Resources	23-8P4VL	23-FF406	23-FF426	23-M2271	CLARK		
🗄 🖆 CIM Monitors	Drive C: % Space U	🌄 Offline	🌄 Offline	83%	94%	🛛 🐻 Offline		
🖻 🚖 CPU Monitors	Drive D: % Space U	🌄 Offline	🌄 Offline	58%	28%	🛛 🐻 Offlin		
CPU Utilizati	Locked Memory	🌄 Offline	🌄 Offline	7.6	5.4	🛛 🐻 Offlin		
Process Cou	CPU Utilization	🐻 Offline	🐻 Offline	Collecting I	Collecting I	🛛 🐻 Offlin		
🖻 😋 Disk Monitors 🛁	Process Count	🐻 Offline	🌄 Offline	Collecting I	Collecting I	🛛 🐻 Offlin		
Add to Ticker Tage on T Direc C: % S j Trive C: Spai Drive C: Spai Drive C: Spai Drive C: Spai Drive C: Spai Drive D: Spai Drive D: Spai Drive D: Spai Drive E: Spai	right mouse click	status o or offlin		colle	ected data	]		

Figure 414. Netfinity Director Resource selection

The column Selected Resources shows the monitored attributes and the status of the selected systems whether they are online or offline.

To remove the attributes, place the cursor on the selected resources and right-click. Click **Remove the attribute.** 

Figure 415 shows how to save the threshold.

📅 Resource Monitors: All Systems and Devices									
File View Options Help									
Available Resources	Selected Resources								
E CIM Monitors	Selected Resources	23-8P4VL	23-FF406	23-FF426	23-M2271				
E CPU Monitor	Drive C: % Space U	🐻 Offline	🐻 Offline	83%	92%				
CPU Util	Drive D: % Space U	🌄 Offline	🌄 Offline	59%	35%				
🖃 🗁 🛅 Process	Locked Memory	🌄 Offline	🐻 Offline	5.1	4.2				
Disk 1:V	CPU Utilization	🌄 Offline	🌄 Offline	1%	1%				
Drive C:	🙀 Input			×					
Drive C:	Enter a name for this set of selected resources.								
🔚 🔚 🔤 Drive C:									
🔚 🔤 Drive D: 🛁									
Drive D:									
🔤 Drive D:	Drive D: OK Cancel								
Drive E: '									
🔚 🛅 Drive E: 1									
👘 🔚 🖬 Drive E: 🔽				<u> </u>					
	•				•				

Figure 415. Netfinity Director save threshold

Select **File -> Save As** and a window appears where you can input a name. Type the name in this field and press Enter.

The newly created threshold is stored and then it becomes visible within the Tasks column as shown in Figure 416:

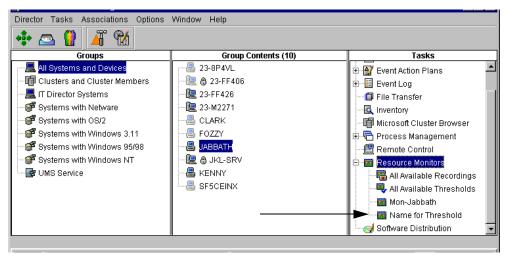


Figure 416. Netfinity Director stores attribute

Figure 417 shows the Netfinity Manager window and how the System Monitor can be started. Double-click the icon **System Monitor**. Two new windows appear: the System Monitor Service window and the CPU Utilization window. From the service window you can determine which monitors will be displayed on the desktop.

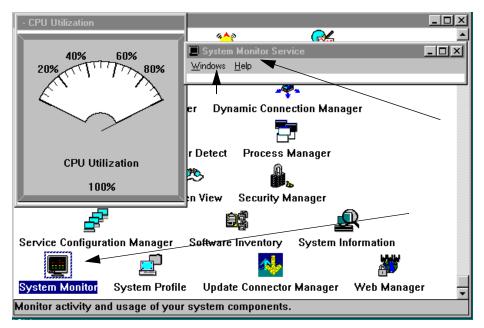


Figure 417. Netfinity Manager System Monitor

Select **Windows** from the tool bar of the System Monitor Service window. It offers you a menu to choose the attributes that can be monitored, as shown in the following figure:

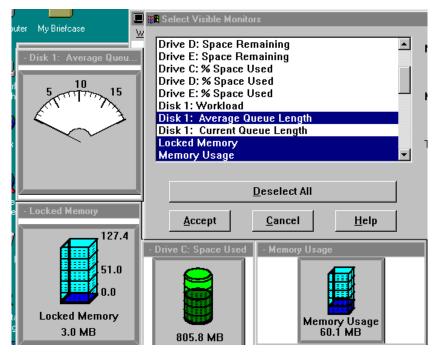


Figure 418. Netfinity Manager Monitors

Select your attributes and click **Accept** to include this change. Netfinity Manager offers several choices for storing the collected data. It stores the data in a file the same way that Netfinity Director does. It can also store the data in an ODBC database, which Netfinity Director can't. Figure 419 shows how to store the data:

Database Selection     Export Database Information to a File.     Export Database Information via ODBC.	×	
· ·	📕 System Monitor Service - Server	
	Windows Help	
1 + Hours + Pro	enitors: PU Utilization ocess Count ive C: Space Used ive D: Space Used	Select Window -> Database
<u>O</u> K <u>C</u> ancel	Select All Monitors	

Figure 419. System Management monitoring information into a database

Select System Monitor Service -> Windows -> Export to database. Select the option to store it in a file or ODBC and click OK.

#### 6.2.9.1 Setting monitor thresholds

The Resource monitor provides a convenient method of monitoring the activities for a number of components in a system. This includes disk state, memory state, or processor information. By using the Resource Monitor Threshold function you can set threshold levels for any of the monitored components. A threshold can be set for a single system or a complete system group. After you have assigned a threshold, an event is triggered if the threshold is met for the system(s). Netfinity Director and Netfinity Manager support the threshold function. In addition, Netfinity Director can support this function for a system group.

#### 6.2.9.2 Setting monitor threshold by Netfinity Director

Figure 420 shows how to start the threshold setting in Netfinity Director:

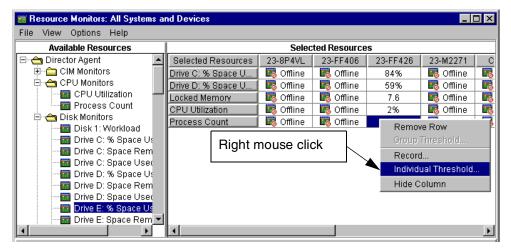


Figure 420. Netfinity Director threshold

Select the attribute and click the right mouse button. Select **Individual Threshold** and the Threshold setting will appear.

Figure 421 appears and requires some input. The following items are needed to create the threshold.

• Name

A name to identify this threshold in the network.

· Enabled to generate events

Selecting this box activates the threshold.

· Generate events on value changes

Select this to generate an event when the value of the tracked attribute changes.

· Maximum queued events

Specify the number of events for this threshold to be held for the server when the server is temporarily unavailable.

Minimum Duration

This specifies the length of time that the threshold must be exceeded before an alert is generated.

• Resend Delay

This specifies the length of time that the system monitors the attribute before resending an alert.

Above Or Equal

High Warning - Generates a critical event if the resource value is equal or greater than the value specified in this field.

Low Warning - Generates a warning event if the resource value is equal or greater than the value specified in this field.

• Below Or Equal - Similar in concept to the Above Or Equal field but uses the values below or equal.

💐 System Threshold: 2	3-FF426		×	
Thresholds [Director	Agent][Memory M	lonitors][Locked	Memory]	
Name:	CPUtemp			
Description:				
Enabled to generate	e events			
🗆 Generate events on	value change		▼	
Maximum queued event	ts O			
Minimum Duration	5	÷ minute(s	)	
Resend Delay	0	+ hour(s)		
Above Or Equal			High Error High Warning Normal Low Warning Low Error	
Threshold Event Sev	erity: 📕 Critical	📔 Warning 🚦	Harmless	
ок	Cancel	Delete	Help	

Figure 421. Netfinity Director threshold settings

Click **OK** to save the settings.

#### 6.2.9.3 Setting monitor threshold by Netfinity Manager

Figure 422 shows how to start the threshold setting in Netfinity Manager:

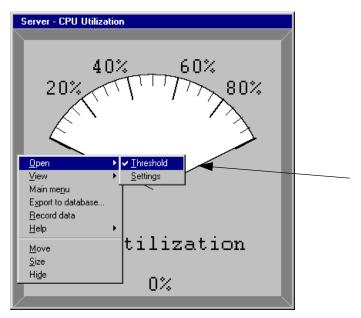


Figure 422. Netfinity Manager start set Threshold

Double-click the **System Monitor** icon (shown in Figure 417 on page 279), then click **Start System Monitors -> Show Monitors** and the preselected monitors appear. Select the monitors that you want to access. Double-click or use the context menu to open the threshold settings.

Figure 423 on page 284 requires some input. The following entries are needed to create the threshold:

• Threshold Name

A name to identify this threshold during the network

**Note:** When using Windows NT, press Enter in the threshold box to cause the Create button to become active.

Duration

This specifies the length of time that the threshold must exceed before an alert is generated.

• Resend Delay

This specifies the length of time that the system monitors the attribute before resending an alert.

Values

You can set up to four different values, each of which will generate a different Netfinity alert.

Severity

The severity can help decide what action should be taken.

Server - CP	U Utilization						
	Threshold Name						
CPU temp	CPU temp						
	Duration	Resend Delay 🗡					
5	Minutes 1 5	1 Seconds 1					
Levels							
	Values	Severity Notify					
	Error if above or equal to 2	2 1 2					
	Warning if above or equal to 2	4 1					
	· · · ·						
	Alert on return to normal						
	Warning if below or equal to	4 🕆 🔽					
	Error if below or equal to	2 👘 🕅					
	🗖 Local Notif	fy					
Create	Delete Change	<u>U</u> ndo <u>H</u> elp					

Figure 423. Netfinity Manager sets threshold configure page

Click Create to proceed.

#### 6.2.9.4 Adding the ticker

The scrolling ticker tape provides a constant, dynamically updated display of important and critical information. Information is scrolled across the bottom of the Netfinity Director console. Figure 424 shows the ticker display and how to activate the ticker for Netfinity Director. Netfinity Manager doesn't support this function.

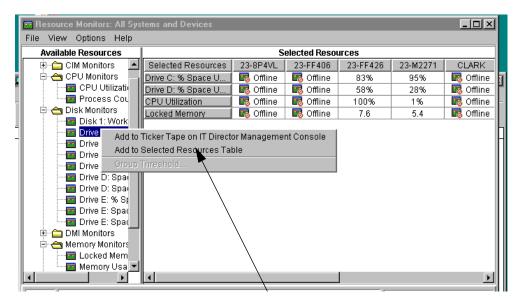


Figure 424. Netfinity Director console ticker

Place the mouse on a folder in the Available Resources pane and click the right mouse button. Select **Add to Selected Resources Table** from the context menu. The ticker starts to run and provides the selected information.

#### 6.2.9.5 Removing the ticker

Figure 425 shows how to remove the ticker from the Netfinity Director console:

								_
Director Tasks Association	ons Options	Window	Help					
💠 🛆 🔮 🔏 (	24							
Groups			Group Contents (10)			Tas	ks	
All Systems and Devic	es	23-8	P4VL			CIM Browser		-
Clusters and Cluster	Members	- 🖳 🖨 23	3-FF406			DMI Browser		
IT Director Systems		🖳 🖳 23-F	F426		± 💇	Event Action	Plans	
📕 📲 Systems with Netware		🖳 🖳 23-М	12271		÷	Event Log		
🖉 💕 Systems with OS/2		- 📇 CLAI	RK		0	File Transfer		
📗 💕 Systems with Window	/s 3.11	FOZ	ZY			Inventory		
📗 📲 Systems with Window	/s 95/98	🛛 📇 JABE	BATH			Microsoft Clu	ster Browser	
📗 💕 Systems with Window	/s NT	l 🖳 🖳 🖉 JI	KL-SRV		÷	Process Mar	agement	
🛛 📑 UMS Service		🛛 📇 KEN	NY			Remote Con	trol	
			CEINX		±	Resource Mo	onitors	•
ace Used 60% • 23-FF426	Message E	) Prowser	3% • 23-FF406 - Dri	ive C: % Spac	ce Used	Offline • 9	SF5CEINX - Dr	rive C
Ready	Remove M	onitor 🔹 🕨	23-FF426 - Drive C	): % Space U	Jsed	: manfred	8:06 PM ED	л
	Remove Al	l Monitors	23-FF406 - Drive 0	): % Space U	Jsed			_
			SF5CEINX - Drive	C: % Space	Used			
			23-8P4VL - Drive (	C: % Space U	Jsed			
			JKL-SRV - Drive C	: % Space U	sed			
			JABBATH - Drive C	): % Space U	Ised			

Figure 425. Netfinity Director ticker removal

Place the mouse courser on the ticker display. Click the right mouse button to get the context menu. Select either **Remove All Monitors** or **Remove Monitor** to remove the systems separately. If all systems are removed the ticker display will stop running.

#### 6.2.10 Software distribution

The software distribution task icon is located in the task menu. This feature is not supported by Netfinity Director. Software distribution is supported by Tivoli IT Director, which means that the software distribution task icon is visible but not functioning. It can be activated if you have a Tivoli license key. Netfinity Director allows you to perform an upgrade to a full IT Director version. The upgrade installation procedure is very easy and doesn't take long. Figure 426 shows the window main menu from which you can start to install the license key upgrade:

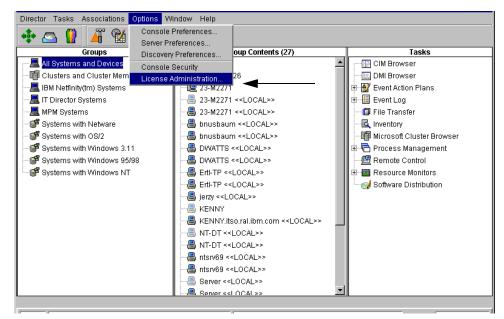


Figure 426. Netfinity Director license key upgrade

Select **Options -> License Administration**. Figure 427 shows all license keys that are installed:

	Lice	ense Keys			
License Key	Client Count	License Typ	)e	Product	Name
✓	1000	Not For Resa	ale   Tivoli IT	Director and	MPM Systems (
	Licensed Pro	oduct Compone	ents		
Product Name	4	oduct Componental Licenses	e <b>nts</b> Available	Used	Maximum

Figure 427. Netfinity Director license keys installed

Click **License -> Add License Key** to get the window to insert the license key. Figure 428 shows the window to upgrade the license key.

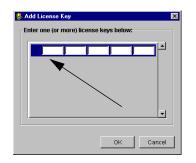


Figure 428. Netfinity Director license key upgrade

Type in the license key and start the system management software again to get access to the full IT Director version.

## 6.3 Accessing older UMA clients

The Universal Management Agent (UMA) is available for free installation on licensed IBM systems only. The base UMA module must be installed on each client to be managed. This module is installed using either the UMA typical or custom installation option. UMA can also be installed remotely from Tivoli. See the redbook *Universal Management Agent: Functions and Integration*, SG24-5294 for more details.

The Universal Management Agent is not supported by Netfinity Director. Netfinity Director doesn't show systems with UMA or Universal Management Agent Plus installed.

# Appendix A. Netfinity Director tables

This appendix shows the column names and column types of the tables created by Netfinity Director in the DBMS.

Because IBM DB2 V5 has some limitations on the length of DB table names and column names, the information that is displayed in **bold** is specific to Microsoft SQL. All other information is common to IBM DB2 and Microsoft SQL Server 7.0. A table comparing the actual DB table names and Netfinity Director standard queries can be found in Table 9 on page 214.

### A.1 Windows NT cluster information

Description: General information about the cluster.

IBM DB2 table name: MSCS\_CLUS\_INFO

MS-SQL table name: MSCS\_CLUS\_INFO

Table 16. DB table: Windows NT cluster information

Column name	Туре	Description
MANAGED_OBJ_ID	Integer not null	Identifies unique cluster ID
MSCS_NAME	Char(64)	Cluster name
MSCS_MAJ_VER	Integer	Major version number
MSCS_MIN_VER	Integer	Minor version number
MSCS_BUILD	Integer	Cluster build number
MSCS_VENDOR	Char(64)	Cluster vendor
MSCS_CSD	Char(64)	Cluster CSD

#### A.2 Windows NT cluster group-resource map

Description: Describes which resources belong to which groups.

IBM DB2 table name: MSCS\_GROUP\_RES

MS-SQL table name: MSCS\_GROUP\_RES

Table 17. IDB table: Windows NT cluster group-resource map

Column name	Туре	Description
MANAGED_OBJ_ID	Integer not null	Identifies unique cluster ID
MSCS_GRP_NAME	Char(64) not null	Group name
MSCS_RES_NAME	Char(64) not null	Resource name

## A.3 Windows NT cluster groups

Description: Tells which groups are currently owned by which node.

IBM DB2 table name: MSCS\_GROUPS

#### MS-SQL table name: MSCS\_GROUPS

Table 18. DB table: Windows NT cluster groups

Column name	Туре	Description
MANAGED_OBJ_ID	Integer not null	Identifies unique cluster ID
MSCS_GRP_NAME	Char(64) not null	Group name
MSCS_GRP_NODE	Char(64)	Current owner node

#### A.4 Windows NT cluster network interfaces

Description: This is information about the network interfaces.

IBM DB2 table name: MSCS\_NET\_INT

MS-SQL table name: MSCS\_NET\_INT

Table 19. DB table: Windows NT cluster network interfaces

Column name	Туре	Description
MANAGED_OBJ_ID	Integer not null	Identifies unique cluster ID
MSCS_NET_NAME	Char(64) not null	Network name
MSCS_NETINT_NAME	Char(64) not null	Network interface name
MSCS_NODE_NAME	Char(64)	Node name

## A.5 Windows NT cluster resources

Description: This is information about the cluster resources.

IBM DB2 table name: MSCS\_RESOURCES

MS-SQL table name: MSCS\_RESOURCES

Table 20. DB table: Windows NT cluster resources

Column name	Туре	Description
MANAGED_OBJ_ID	Integer not null	Identifies unique cluster ID
MSCS_RES_TYPE	Char(64) not null	Resource type
MSCS_RES_NAME	Char(64) not null	Resource name
MSCS_RES_DEP_NET	Char(64)	Resource dependent network

Column name	Туре	Description
MSCS_RES_CUR_OWN	Char(64)	Current owner group
MSCS_RES_NODE	Char(64)	Current owner node

## A.6 Cluster membership

Description: Describes the relationship between system IDs and cluster IDs, and which systems belong in which clusters.

IBM DB2 table name: TWG\_CLUS\_MEMBERSH

MS-SQL table name: TWG\_CLUS\_MEMBERSHIP

Table 21. DB table: cluster membership

Column name	Туре	Description
MANAGED_OBJ_ID	Integer not null	Identifies unique system ID
CLUSTER_OBJ_ID	Integer not null	Identifies unique cluster ID

## A.7 Cluster members

Description: Here is information about the member name and type of cluster nodes.

IBM DB2 table name: TWG\_CLUSTER\_MEMBE

MS-SQL table name: TWG\_CLUSTER\_MEMBERS

Table 22. DB table: cluster members

Column name	Туре	Description
MANAGED_OBJ_ID	Integer not null	Identifies unique cluster ID
CLUS_MEMBER_NAME	Char(64) not null	Cluster member name
CLUS_MEMBER_TYPE	Char(16) not null	Cluster member type
MEM_MANAGED_OBJ_ID MEMBER_MANAGED_O BJ_ID	Integer	Identifies unique system ID

### A.8 Component ID

This is information on the system, one entry per managed\_obj\_id. See also A.27, "Physical enclosure" on page 300.

IBM DB2 table name: TWG\_COMPONENT\_ID

#### MS-SQL table name: TWG\_COMPONENT\_ID

Table 23. DB table: component ID

Column name	Туре	Description
MANAGED_OBJ_ID	Integer not null	Identifies unique system ID
MANUFACTURER	Char(40)	Manufacturer
PRODUCT	Char(40)	System product number
VERSION	Char(40)	System version number
SERIAL_NUMBER	Char(40)	System serial number
UUID	Char(40)	Universal Unique Identifier

## A.9 Disk

This is information about all physical disks in the system, one entry per physical unit. See also A.17, "Logical drive" on page 295 and A.25, "Partition" on page 299.

IBM DB2 table name: TWG\_DISK

MS-SQL table name: TWG\_DISK

Column name	Туре	Description
MANAGED_OBJ_ID	Integer not null	Identifies unique system ID
DISK_TYPE	Char(32) not null	Disk type, for example: CDROM, FLOPPY, HARDDISK
DISK_INDEX	Integer not null	Index number
DISK_MEDIA_LOADED	Char(10)	Is a media inserted? Example: TRUE, FALSE
DISK_REMOV_MEDIA DISK_REMOVABLE_MEDI A	Char(10)	Is media removable? Example: TRUE, FALSE
DISK_CYLINDERS	Integer	Number of cylinders
DISK_SECTOR_PR_TRK DISK_SECTORS_PER_T RACK	Integer	Numbers of sectors per track
DISK_TOTAL_SIZE_KB	Integer	Capacity in KB
DISK_HEADS	Integer	Number of heads on disk

## A.10 IDE adapter

This is information on the IDE adapter subsystem, one entry per adapter.

IBM DB2 table name: TWG\_IDE\_ADAPTER

#### MS-SQL table name: TWG\_IDE\_ADAPTER

Table 25. DB table: IDE adapter

Column name	Туре	Description
MANAGED_OBJ_ID	Integer not null	Identifies unique system ID
IDE_INDEX	Integer not null	Index number
IDE_BUS_TYPE	Char(32)	Bus type
IDE_LOCATION	Char(32)	Location, for example: PLANAR
DEVICES_CONNECTED	Integer	Number of devices connected

### A.11 IDE device

This is information about IDE devices, one entry per device per adapter.

IBM DB2 table name: TWG\_IDE\_DEVICE

MS-SQL table name: TWG\_IDE\_DEVICE

Table 26. DB table: IDE device

Column name	Туре	Description
MANAGED_OBJ_ID	Integer not null	Identifies unique system ID
IDE_ADAPTER_INDEX	Integer not null	Index number
IDE_DEVICE_INDEX	Integer not null	Index number
DEVICE_SIZE	Integer	Device size in kilobytes
DEVICE_TYPE	Char(32)	Device type, for example: CDROM
UNIT_STATUS	Char(32)	Unit status, for example: READY
MEDIA_STATUS	Char(32)	Media status, for example: PRESENT, NOT_PRESENT
PRODUCT_ID	Char(40)	Product ID/description

## A.12 Installed memory

This is information on installed memory, one entry per managed\_obj\_id. See also A.18, "Logical memory" on page 296 and A.19, "Memory modules" on page 296.

IBM DB2 table name: TWG\_INSTALLED\_MEM

MS-SQL table name: TWG\_INSTALLED\_MEMORY

Table 27. DB table: installed memory

Column name	Туре	Description
MANAGED_OBJ_ID	Integer not null	Identifies unique system ID
PHYSICAL_MEMORY_KB	Integer	Total physical memory in kilobytes

Column name	Туре	Description
FREE_VIRT_MEM_KB FREE_VIRTUAL_MEMOR Y_KB	Integer	Free virtual memory in kilobytes
PAGE_SIZE	Integer	Page size in bytes

## A.13 IP address

IP address information, one entry per adapter.

IBM DB2 table name: TWG\_IP\_ADDRESS

MS-SQL table name: TWG\_IP\_ADDRESS

Table 28. DB table: IP address

Column name	Туре	Description
MANAGED_OBJ_ID	Integer not null	Identifies unique system ID
IP_INDEX	Integer not null	Index number
IP_ADDRESS	Char(16)	IP address, for example: 9.24.15.234
IP_HOSTNAME	Char(254)	Hostname
IP_DOMAIN	Char(254)	Domain
SUBNET_MASK	Char(16)	Subnet mask, for example: 255.255.0.0
NAMESERVER1	Char(16)	Name server 1
NAMESERVER2	Char(16)	Name server 2
DEFAULT_GATEWAY	Char(16)	Default gateway

## A.14 IPX address

IPX address information, one entry per adapter.

IBM DB2 table name: TWG\_IPX\_ADDRESS

MS-SQL table name: TWG\_IPX\_ADDRESS

Table 29. DB table: IPX address

Column name	Туре	Description
MANAGED_OBJ_ID	Integer not null	Identifies unique system ID
IPX_INDEX	Integer not null	Index number
IPX_ADDRESS	Char(32)	

# A.15 Keyboard

Keyboard information, one entry per managed\_obj\_id.

IBM DB2 table name: TWG\_KEYBOARD

#### MS-SQL table name: TWG\_KEYBOARD

Table 30. DB table: keyboard

Column name	Туре	Description
MANAGED_OBJ_ID	Integer not null	Identifies unique system ID
KEYBOARD_TYPE	Char(80)	Type of keyboard, for example: 101KEY
CODEPAGE	Integer	Code page, for example: 437
TYPEMATIC_RATE	Integer	Characters per second
TYPEMATIC_DELA TYPEMATIC_DELAY	Integer	Repeat delay in milliseconds

## A.16 LAN network ID

Network information, one entry per managed\_obj\_id.

IBM DB2 table name: TWG\_WINDOW\_NET\_ID

MS-SQL table name: TWG\_WINDOWS\_NETWORK\_ID

Table 31. DB table: LAN network ID

Column name	Туре	Description
MANAGED_OBJ_ID	Integer not null	Identifies unique system ID
COMPUTER_NAME	Char(16)	NetBIOS network address
USERNAME	Char(16)	Logged on username
DOMAIN	Char(16)	Domain
WORKGROUP	Char(16)	Workgroup
REG_OWNER	Char(80)	Registered owner
REG_ORGANIZATION	Char(80)	Registered organization
REG_PRODUCT_ID	Char(40)	Registered product ID

## A.17 Logical drive

This is information on logical drives, one entry per logical drive. See also A.9, "Disk" on page 292 and A.25, "Partition" on page 299.

IBM DB2 table name: TWG\_LOGICAL\_DRIVE

MS-SQL table name:	TWG_	LOGICAL_	DRIVE
--------------------	------	----------	-------

Table 32. DB table: logical drive

	1	
Column name	Туре	Description
MANAGED_OBJ_ID	Integer not null	Identifies unique system ID
DRIVE_INDEX	Integer not null	Index number
DRIVE_TYPE	Char(20)	FLOPPY, FIXED, CDROM, REMOTE

Column name	Туре	Description
DRIVE_NAME	Char(64)	Drive ID, for example: A:, C:, SYS
DRIVE_PATH	Char(254)	LAN-share name, for example: \\server\share. NULL for local drives
DRIVE_TOT_SIZE_KB DRIVE_TOTAL_SIZE_KB	Integer	Total size of drive in kilobyte
DRIVE_FREE_SIZE_KB	Integer	Free size of drive in kilobytes

## A.18 Logical memory

This is information about logical system memory, one entry per managed\_obj\_id. See also A.12, "Installed memory" on page 293 and A.19, "Memory modules" on page 296.

IBM DB2 table name: TWG\_LOGICAL\_MEMOR

MS-SQL table name: TWG\_LOGICAL\_MEMORY

Table 33. DB table: logical memory

Column name	Туре	Description
MANAGED_OBJ_ID	Integer not null	Identifies unique system ID
BASE_MEMORY_KB	Integer	Base memory in kilobyte
EXTENDED_MEMORY_KB	Integer	Extended memory in kilobytes

#### A.19 Memory modules

This is information on installed memory modules, one entry per installed memory module. See also A.12, "Installed memory" on page 293 and A.18, "Logical memory" on page 296.

IBM DB2 table name: TWG\_MEM\_MODULE

MS-SQL table name: TWG\_MEM\_MODULE

Table 34. DB table: memory modules

Column name	Туре	Description
MANAGED_OBJ_ID	Integer not null	Identifies unique system ID
MODULE_INDEX	Integer not null	Index number
SOCKET_NAME	Char(32)	Socket name, for example: DIMM 0
BANK_NAME	Char(32)	Memory bank Name
MODULE_SIZE	Double	Size of memory module in megabytes
MODULE_SPEED	Double	Memory speed in nanoseconds
FULL_BIT_WIDTH	Integer	Full bit width
DATA_BIT_WIDTH	Integer	Data bit width

Column name	Туре	Description
FORM_FACTOR	Char(10)	Form factor, for example: DIMM
MEMORY_TYPE	Char(16)	Memory type, for example: SDRAM
MEMORY_ERROR	Char(8)	Indicates if there has been a failure

### A.20 Motherboard

Motherboard information, one entry per managed\_obj\_id.

IBM DB2 table name: TWG\_MOTHERBRD\_ID

MS-SQL table name: TWG\_MOTHERBOARD\_ID

Table 35. DB table: motherboard

Column name	Туре	Description
MANAGED_OBJ_ID	Integer not null	Identifies unique system ID
MANUFACTURER	Char(40)	Manufacturer
PRODUCT	Char(40)	Product
VERSION	Char(40)	Version
SERIAL_NUMBER	Char(40)	System board serial number

### A.21 Network adapter

This is information about network adapters, one entry per adapter.

IBM DB2 table name: TWG\_NETWORK\_ADAPT

#### MS-SQL table name: TWG\_NETWORK\_ADAPTER

Table 36. DB table: network adapte	able: network adapter	Table 36. DB table:
------------------------------------	-----------------------	---------------------

Column name	Туре	Description
MANAGED_OBJ_ID	Integer not null	Identifies unique system ID
ADAPTER_INDEX	Integer not null	Index number
ADAPTER_TYPE	Char(20)	Adapter type, for example: ETHERNET, TOKENRING, PPP
MAC_ADDRESS	Char(12)	MAC address
CANONICAL_ADDRESS	Char(12)	Canonical MAC address
DESCRIPTION	Char(80)	Adapter description

## A.22 On-board device

This is information about on-board-devices, one entry per device.

IBM DB2 table name: TWG\_ONBOARD\_DEV

#### MS-SQL table name: TWG\_ONBOARD\_DEV

Table 37. DB table: on-board device

Column name	Туре	Description
MANAGED_OBJ_ID	Integer not null	Identifies unique system ID
DEVICE_INDEX	Integer not null	Index number
DEVICE_TYPE	Char(20)	Device type, for example: ETHERNET, SOUND, VIDEO, OTHER
DEVICE_STATUS	Char(20)	Device status
DESCRIPTION	Char(80)	Description, for example: ALERTPACK, RFID, ETHERNET

## A.23 Operating system

Operating system information, one entry per operating system installed.

IBM DB2 table name: TWG\_OPERATING\_SYS

MS-SQL table name: TWG\_OPERATING\_SYSTEM

Table 38. DB table: operating system

Column name	Туре	Description
MANAGED_OBJ_ID	Integer not null	Identifies unique system ID
OP_SYS_INDEX	Integer not null	Index number
OP_SYS_NAME	Char(64)	Name of operating system, for example: WIN95, WINNT, NETWARE, OS2
OP_SYS_TYPE	Char(64)	Type, for example: WINDOWS_NT, WINDOWS_9X, NETWARE, OS2
OP_SYS_VERSION	Char(64)	Operating system version
OP_SYS_PRIMARY	Char(20)	Is this the primary operating system, for example: TRUE/FALSE
OP_SYS_REVISION	Char(32)	Revision, build level, service pack, for example: 1381 SERVICE PACK 4

## A.24 Parallel port

Parallel port information, one entry per parallel port.

IBM DB2 table name: TWG\_PARALLEL\_PORT

MS-SQL table name: TWG\_PARALLEL\_PORT

#### Table 39. DB table: parallel port

Column name	Туре	Description
MANAGED_OBJ_ID	Integer not null	Identifies unique system ID
PORT_INDEX	Integer not null	Index number

Column name	Туре	Description
BASE_IO_ADDRESS	Integer	Base IO address
LOGICAL_NAME	Char(32)	Logical name, for example: LPT1

## A.25 Partition

Partition information, one entry per partition on system. See also A.9, "Disk" on page 292 and A.17, "Logical drive" on page 295.

IBM DB2 table name: TWG\_PARTITION

#### MS-SQL table name: TWG\_PARTITION

Table 40. DB table: partition

Column name	Туре	Description
MANAGED_OBJ_ID	Integer not null	Identifies unique system ID
PARTITION_INDEX	Integer not null	Index number
PARTITION_NAME	Char(32)	Partition name/drive letter, for example: C:, D:, SYS
PART_TOTAL_SIZE_KB PARTITION_TOTAL_SIZE_ KB	Integer	Total size of partition in kilobytes
PART_FREE_SIZE_KB PARTITION_FREE_SIZE_ KB	Integer	Free size of partition in kilobytes
PARTITION_LABEL	Char(40)	Partition label
PART_FILESYSTEM PARTITION_FILESYSTEM	Char(32)	File system, for example: NTFS, FAT, FAT32, HPFS, NETWARE

## A.26 PCI device

This is information on PCI subsystem, one entry per PCI slot number per PCI bus.

IBM DB2 table name: TWG\_PCI\_DEVICE

MS-SQL table name: TWG\_PCI\_DEVICE

Table 41. DB table: PCI device

Column name	Туре	Description
MANAGED_OBJ_ID	Integer not null	Identifies unique system ID
PCI_BUS_NUMBER	Integer not null	PCI bus number
PCI_SLOT_NUMBER	Integer not null	PCI slot number
PCI_DEVICE_NUMBER	Integer not null	PCI device number
MANUFACTURER	Char(40)	Manufacturer

Column name	Туре	Description
PCI_TYPE	Char(40)	PCI device type
CLASS_CODE	Integer	Class Code
VENDOR_ID	Integer	Vendor ID
DEVICE_ID	Integer	Device ID
REVISION_ID	Integer	Revision ID
CACHE_LINE_SIZE	Integer	Cache line size
LATENCY_TIMER	Integer	Latency timer
MIN_GNT	Integer	Minimum GNT
MAX_LAT	Integer	Maximum LAT
INTERRUPT_LINE	Integer	Interrupt line
INTERRUPT_PIN	Integer	Interrupt Pin
ROM_BASE_ADDRESS	Integer	ROM base address
HEADER_TYPE	Integer	Header type
BIST	Integer	Built-In-Self-Test
COMMAND_REGISTER	Integer	Command register
STATUS_REGISTER	Integer	Status register

## A.27 Physical enclosure

This is information about the physical system, one entry per managed\_obj\_id. See also A.8, "Component ID" on page 291.

IBM DB2 table name: TWG\_PHYS\_CONT\_GBL

MS-SQL table name: TWG\_PHYS\_CONTAINER\_GLOBAL

Table 42. DB table: physical enclosure

Column name	Туре	Description
MANAGED_OBJ_ID	Integer not null	Identifies unique system ID
ASSET_TAG	Char(80)	Asset tag
MACHINE_MODEL_NAME	Char(80)	Machine model name
MACHINE_TYPE	Char(20)	Machine type
MACHINE_MODEL	Char(20)	Machine model
MACHINE_SERIAL	Char(40)	Machine serial number

### A.28 Pointing device

This is information on the pointing device, one entry per managed\_obj\_id.

IBM DB2 table name: TWG\_POINT\_DEVICE

#### MS-SQL table name: TWG\_POINTING\_DEVICE

Table 43. DB table: pointing device

Column name	Туре	Description
MANAGED_OBJ_ID	Integer not null	Identifies unique system ID
INTERFACE	Char(30)	Interface type, for example: PS2
BUTTONS	Integer	Number of buttons
DOUBLE_CLICK_RATE	Integer	Double-click interval in milliseconds
HANDEDNESS	Char(20)	Handedness, for example: RIGHT
SENSITIVITY	Integer	Sensitivity/cm

### A.29 Printer

Printer information, one entry per printer.

IBM DB2 table name: TWG\_PRINTER

MS-SQL table name: TWG\_PRINTER

Table 44. DB table: printer

Column name	Туре	Description
MANAGED_OBJ_ID	Integer not null	Identifies unique system ID
PRINTER_INDEX	Integer not null	Index number
PORT	Char(40)	Port number, for example: LPT1
QUEUE	Char(40)	Queue
DRIVER	Char(40)	Driver
MODEL	Char(40)	Printer model

### A.30 Processor

Processor information, one entry per processor.

IBM DB2 table name: TWG\_PROCESSOR

MS-SQL table name: TWG\_PROCESSOR

Table 45. DB table: processor

Column name	Туре	Description
MANAGED_OBJ_ID	Integer not null	Identifies unique system ID
PROCESSOR_INDEX	Integer not null	Index number
PROCESSOR_TYPE	Char(32)	Processor type, for example: CPU, MATH or VIDEO
FAMILY	Char(32)	Processor family, for example: PENTIUMII

Column name	Туре	Description
VERSION	Char(80)	Processor version
MAXIMUM_SPEED	Integer	Maximum speed of processor in MHz
CURRENT_SPEED	Integer	Current speed of processor in MHz
INTERNAL_CACHE	Char(20)	Internal cache activated, for example: ENABLED
EXTERNAL_CACHE	Char(20)	External cache activated, for example: NOT_INSTALLED
PROCESSOR_SERIAL	Char(40)	Processor serial number

# A.31 SCSI adapter

SCSI adapter information, one entry per adapter.

IBM DB2 table name: TWG\_SCSI\_ADAPTER

MS-SQL table name: TWG\_SCSI\_ADAPTER

Table 46. DB table: SCSI adapter

Column name	Туре	Description
MANAGED_OBJ_ID	Integer not null	Identifies unique system ID
SCSI_ADAPTER_INDEX	Integer not null	Index number
ADAPTER_TYPE	Char(40)	Adapter type
LOCATION	Char(40)	Adapter location, for example: PLANAR
PUN	Integer	PUN
LUN	Integer	LUN
BUS_TYPE	Char(40)	Bus type, for example: SCSI-II
BUS_WIDTH	Integer	Bus width
IO_ACCESS	Char(40)	IO access
HOST_BUS	Char(40)	Host bus
HOST_BUS_WIDTH	Integer	Host bus width
ADDRESS_OVER_16	Char(40)	Address over 16
SCB_COMMANDS	Char(40)	SCB commands
SCATTER_GATHER	Char(40)	Scatter/gather
CHS	Char(40)	Cylinder/head/sector addressing
MAX_SCAT_GTHR_LIST MAX_SCATTER_GATHER _LIST	Integer	Max scatter/gather list
MAX_CDB_LENGTH	Integer	Max CDB length
ADD_MAJOR_LEVEL	Integer	ADD major level

Column name	Туре	Description
ADD_MINOR_LEVEL	Integer	ADD minor level
DEVICES_CONNECTED	Integer	Number of devices connected

## A.32 SCSI device

SCSI device information, one entry per device per adapter.

#### IBM DB2 table name: TWG\_SCSI\_DEVICE

#### MS-SQL table name: TWG\_SCSI\_DEVICE

Table 47. DB table: SCSI device

Column name	Туре	Description
MANAGED_OBJ_ID	Integer not null	Identifies unique system ID
SCSI_ADAPTER_INDEX	Integer not null	Index number
SCSI_DEVICE_INDEX	Integer not null	Index number
PUN	Integer	PUN
LUN	Integer	LUN
DEVICE_TYPE	Char(32)	Device type, for example: FIXED
DEVICE_SIZE	Integer	Device size in kilobytes
VENDOR_ID	Char(40)	Vendor ID/description
PRODUCT_ID	Char(40)	Product ID/description
PRODUCT_REV_LEVEL PRODUCT_REVISION_LE VEL	Char(40)	Revision level
VENDOR_STRING	Char(254)	Vendor string
VENDOR_DATA	Char(254)	Vendor data
SERIAL_NUMBER	Char(40)	Serial number

## A.33 Serial port

Serial port information, one entry per port.

IBM DB2 table name: TWG\_SERIAL\_PORT

#### MS-SQL table name: TWG\_SERIAL\_PORT

Table 48. DB table: serial port

Column name	Туре	Description
MANAGED_OBJ_ID	Integer not null	Identifies unique system ID
PORT_INDEX	Integer not null	Index number
BASE_IO_ADDRESS	Integer	Base IO address

Column name	Туре	Description
LOGICAL_NAME	Char(32)	Logical name, for example: COM1

### A.34 Software

Software information, one entry per application.

IBM DB2 table name: TWG\_SOFTWARE

MS-SQL table name: TWG\_SOFTWARE

Table 49. DB table: software

Column name	Туре	Description
MANAGED_OBJ_ID	Integer not null	Identifies unique system ID
PROGRAM_TITLE	Char(64) not null	Program title.
INSTALL_PATH	Char(154 / 254) not null	Install path, for example: C:\winnt\system32
VERSION_ID	Char(16)	Version number
VENDOR_NAME	Char(32) not null	Vendor name
REVISION	Char(32)	Revision

## A.35 System

This is information on inventory request, one entry per managed\_obj\_id.

IBM DB2 table name: TWG\_MANAGED\_OBJEC

#### MS-SQL table name: TWG\_MANAGED\_OBJECT

Table 50. DB table: system

Column name	Туре	Description
MANAGED_OBJ_ID	Integer not null	Identifies unique system ID
LABEL	Char(64)	System name
DATE_CREATED	Timestamp	Date system was discovered in NF Director
FIRST_ATTEMPT	Timestamp	Date/time of first attempt of inventory request
LAST_ATTEMPT	Timestamp	Date/time of last attempt of inventory request
LAST_UPDATE	Timestamp	Date/time of last successful inventory request

## A.36 System BIOS

System BIOS information, one entry per managed\_obj\_id.

IBM DB2 table name: TWG\_SYSTEM\_BIOS

#### MS-SQL table name: TWG\_SYSTEM\_BIOS

Table 51. DB table: system BIOS

Column name	Туре	Description
MANAGED_OBJ_ID	Integer not null	Identifies unique system ID
BIOS_INDEX	Integer not null	Index number
BIOS_MANUFACTURER	Char(40)	BIOS manufacturer
BIOS_VERSION	Char(128)	BIOS version
BIOS_RELEASE_DATE	Date	BIOS date
BIOS_SM_VERSION	Char	SMBIOS revision

## A.37 System location

This is information on where the system is located. This data is changed in the local twguser.ini file, one entry per managed\_obj\_id. See also A.39, "System user" on page 306.

#### IBM DB2 table name: TWG\_SYS\_LOCATION

#### MS-SQL table name: TWG\_SYSTEM\_LOCATION

Table 52.	DB table: system	location
-----------	------------------	----------

Column name	Туре	Description
MANAGED_OBJ_ID	Integer not null	Identifies unique system ID
CITY	Char(32)	City
STATE	Char(32)	State
ZIPCODE	Char(16)	Zip code
COUNTRY	Char(32)	Country
ROOM_NUMBER	Char(32)	Room number
BUILDING	Char(32)	Building location
FLOOR	Char(32)	Building floor
LATITUDE	Char(32)	Latitude
LONGITUDE	Char(32)	Longitude
USER_DATA1	Char(254)	
USER_DATA2	Char(254)	

## A.38 System resource

This is information about the resources of the system, one entry per managed\_obj\_id.

#### IBM DB2 table name: TWG\_SYS\_RESOURCE

#### MS-SQL table name: TWG\_SYSTEM\_RESOURCE

Table 53. DB table: system resource

Column name	Туре	Description
MANAGED_OBJ_ID	Integer not null	Identifies unique system ID
RESOURCE_INDEX	Integer not null	Index number
RESOURCE_USER	Integer	User index
RESOURCE_SET	Integer	Set index
DESCRIPTION	Char(80)	Description
RESOURCE_TYPE	Char(20)	Resource type, for example: IRQ, DMA, MEMORY
RESOURCE_NUMBER	Integer	Resource number
START_ADDRESS	Char(16)	Starting memory address
END_ADDRESS	Char(16)	Ending memory address

## A.39 System user

This is information about the user of this system. This data is changed in the local *twguser.ini* file, one entry per managed\_obj\_id. See also A.37, "System location" on page 305.

IBM DB2 table name: TWG\_SYSTEM\_USER

MS-SQL table name: TWG\_SYSTEM\_USER

Column name	Туре	Description
MANAGED_OBJ_ID	Integer not null	Identifies unique system ID
FIRST_NAME	Char(32)	First name
MIDDLE_NAME	Char(32)	Middle name
LAST_NAME	Char(32)	Last name
EMPLOYEE_ID	Char(32)	Employee ID
TITLE	Char(32)	Title
DEPT_NAME	Char(32)	Department name
DEPT_NUMBER	Char(32)	Department number
DIVISION	Char(32)	Division
WORK_PHONE	Char(32)	Office telephone number

Column name	Туре	Description
CELLULAR_PHONE	Char(32)	Cellular telephone number
FAX_NUMBER	Char(32)	Office fax number
PAGER_NUMBER	Char(32)	Office pager number
PAGER_TYPE	Char(32)	Office pager type
EMAIL_ADDRESS	Char(128)	Office e-mail address
HOME_PHONE	Char(32)	Home telephone number

# A.40 Video

Video subsystem information, one entry per video subsystem.

IBM DB2 table name: TWG\_VIDEO

MS-SQL table name: TWG\_VIDEO

Table 55. DB table: video

Column name	Туре	Description
MANAGED_OBJ_ID	Integer not null	Identifies unique system ID
VIDEO_INDEX	Integer not null	Index number
VIDEO_TYPE	Char(40)	Type of display <i>in use</i> , for example: SVGA, VGA, XGA
VIDEO_ADAPTER	Char(40)	Type of adapter <i>in use</i>
VIDEO_MEMORY_KB	Integer	Amount of memory in kilobytes
COLORS	Integer	Number of colors displayed
HORIZONTAL_RES	Integer	Horizontal resolution in pixels
VERTICAL_RES	Integer	Vertical resolution in pixels

# Appendix B. Special notices

This publication is intended to help systems management professionals implement Netfinity Director in their existing environments. The information in this publication is not intended as the specification of any programming interfaces that are provided by the Netfinity Director product. See the PUBLICATIONS section of the IBM Programming Announcement for Netfinity Director for more information about what publications are considered to be product documentation.

References in this publication to IBM products, programs or services do not imply that IBM intends to make these available in all countries in which IBM operates. Any reference to an IBM product, program, or service is not intended to state or imply that only IBM's product, program, or service may be used. Any functionally equivalent program that does not infringe any of IBM's intellectual property rights may be used instead of the IBM product, program or service.

Information in this book was developed in conjunction with use of the equipment specified, and is limited in application to those specific hardware and software products and levels.

IBM may have patents or pending patent applications covering subject matter in this document. The furnishing of this document does not give you any license to these patents. You can send license inquiries, in writing, to the IBM Director of Licensing, IBM Corporation, North Castle Drive, Armonk, NY 10504-1785.

Licensees of this program who wish to have information about it for the purpose of enabling: (i) the exchange of information between independently created programs and other programs (including this one) and (ii) the mutual use of the information which has been exchanged, should contact IBM Corporation, Dept. 600A, Mail Drop 1329, Somers, NY 10589 USA.

Such information may be available, subject to appropriate terms and conditions, including in some cases, payment of a fee.

The information contained in this document has not been submitted to any formal IBM test and is distributed AS IS. The information about non-IBM ("vendor") products in this manual has been supplied by the vendor and IBM assumes no responsibility for its accuracy or completeness. The use of this information or the implementation of any of these techniques is a customer responsibility and depends on the customer's ability to evaluate and integrate them into the customer's operational environment. While each item may have been reviewed by IBM for accuracy in a specific situation, there is no guarantee that the same or similar results will be obtained elsewhere. Customers attempting to adapt these techniques to their own environments do so at their own risk.

Any pointers in this publication to external Web sites are provided for convenience only and do not in any manner serve as an endorsement of these Web sites.

Any performance data contained in this document was determined in a controlled environment, and therefore, the results that may be obtained in other operating environments may vary significantly. Users of this document should verify the applicable data for their specific environment. Reference to PTF numbers that have not been released through the normal distribution process does not imply general availability. The purpose of including these reference numbers is to alert IBM customers to specific information relative to the implementation of the PTF when it becomes available to each customer according to the normal IBM PTF distribution process.

The following terms are trademarks of the International Business Machines Corporation in the United States and/or other countries:

Alert on LAN
Asset ID
IBM
Netfinity
NetView
OS/390
RS/6000
ServeRAID
SP
System/390
ViaVoice
WebSphere
400

The following terms are trademarks of other companies:

C-bus is a trademark of Corollary, Inc. in the United States and/or other countries.

Java and all Java-based trademarks and logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the United States and/or other countries.

Microsoft, Windows, Windows NT, and the Windows logo are trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

PC Direct is a trademark of Ziff Communications Company in the United States and/or other countries and is used by IBM Corporation under license.

ActionMedia, LANDesk, MMX, Pentium and ProShare are trademarks of Intel Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

UNIX is a registered trademark in the United States and/or other countries licensed exclusively through X/Open Company Limited.

SET and the SET logo are trademarks owned by SET Secure Electronic Transaction LLC.

Other company, product, and service names may be trademarks or service marks of others.

# Appendix C. Related publications

The publications listed in this section are considered particularly suitable for a more detailed discussion of the topics covered in this redbook.

### C.1 International Technical Support Organization publications

For information on ordering these ITSO publications see "How to get IBM Redbooks" on page 313.

- Netfinity Server Management, SG24-5208
- Integration Examples for Tivoli IT Director: A First Look, SG24-5207
- Using LCCM Functions with Servers and Workstations, SG24-5292
- Universal Management Agent: Functions and Integration, SG24-5294
- Universal Manageability: Enterprise Management Integration, SG24-5388

### C.2 IBM Redbooks collections

Redbooks are also available on the following CD-ROMs. Click the CD-ROMs button at <a href="http://www.redbooks.ibm.com/">http://www.redbooks.ibm.com/</a> for information about all the CD-ROMs offered, updates and formats.

CD-ROM Title	Collection Kit Number
System/390 Redbooks Collection	SK2T-2177
Networking and Systems Management Redbooks Collection	SK2T-6022
Transaction Processing and Data Management Redbooks Collection	SK2T-8038
Lotus Redbooks Collection	SK2T-8039
Tivoli Redbooks Collection	SK2T-8044
AS/400 Redbooks Collection	SK2T-2849
Netfinity Hardware and Software Redbooks Collection	SK2T-8046
RS/6000 Redbooks Collection (BkMgr Format)	SK2T-8040
RS/6000 Redbooks Collection (PDF Format)	SK2T-8043
Application Development Redbooks Collection	SK2T-8037
IBM Enterprise Storage and Systems Management Solutions	SK3T-3694

## C.3 Referenced Web sites

These Web sites are also relevant as further information sources:

http://www.dmtf.org
http://www.w3.org/XML
http://www.ibm.com/xml
http://www.pc.ibm.com/us/desktop/alertonlan/softreqs.html
http://www.pc.ibm.com/us/desktop/alertonlan/index.html
http://www.intel.com/network/network_strategy/aol.htm
http://www.pc.ibm.com/us/desktop/alertonlan/syssupport.html
http://www.redbooks.ibm.com

http://www.redbooks.ibm.com/abstracts/sg245208.html
http://www.microsoft.com/SQL/70/whpprs/jetmsde.htm
http://www.elink.ibmlink.ibm.com/pbl/pbl
http://w3.itso.ibm.com
http://w3.ibm.com

# How to get IBM Redbooks

This section explains how both customers and IBM employees can find out about IBM Redbooks, redpieces, and CD-ROMs. A form for ordering books and CD-ROMs by fax or e-mail is also provided.

• Redbooks Web Site http://www.redbooks.ibm.com/

Search for, view, download, or order hardcopy/CD-ROM Redbooks from the Redbooks Web site. Also read redpieces and download additional materials (code samples or diskette/CD-ROM images) from this Redbooks site.

Redpieces are Redbooks in progress; not all Redbooks become redpieces and sometimes just a few chapters will be published this way. The intent is to get the information out much quicker than the formal publishing process allows.

#### • E-mail Orders

Send orders by e-mail including information from the IBM Redbooks fax order form to:

e-mail address usib6fpl@ibmmail.com Contact information is in the "How to Order" section at this site: http://www.elink.ibmlink.ibm.com/pbl/pbl
1-800-879-2755 1-800-IBM-4YOU Country coordinator phone number is in the "How to Order" section at this site: http://www.elink.ibmlink.ibm.com/pbl/pbl
1-800-445-9269 1-403-267-4455 Fax phone number is in the "How to Order" section at this site: http://www.elink.ibmlink.ibm.com/pbl/pbl

This information was current at the time of publication, but is continually subject to change. The latest information may be found at the Redbooks Web site.

#### — IBM Intranet for Employees –

IBM employees may register for information on workshops, residencies, and Redbooks by accessing the IBM Intranet Web site at <a href="http://w3.itso.ibm.com/">http://w3.itso.ibm.com/</a> and clicking the ITSO Mailing List button. Look in the Materials repository for workshops, presentations, papers, and Web pages developed and written by the ITSO technical professionals; click the Additional Materials button. Employees may access MyNews at <a href="http://w3.ibm.com/">http://w3.ibm.com/</a> for redbook, residency, and workshop announcements.

IBM Redbooks fax order	form		
Please send me the following:			
Title		Order Number	Quantity
First name	Last name		
Company			
Address			
City	Postal code	Country	
Telephone number	Telefax number	VAT number	
Invoice to customer number			
Credit card number			
_			
Credit card expiration date	Card issued to	Signature	

We accept American Express, Diners, Eurocard, Master Card, and Visa. Payment by credit card not available in all countries. Signature mandatory for credit card payment.

# Index

# Α

ACPI 34 Actions menu 102 administrator rights 41 Advanced System Management 169 Advanced System Manager 240 Agent 29 Alert Type 255, 259 Application Alert Type 255, 259 Application ID 255, 259 automatic discovery 75

# В

BIOS 34, 78, 176, 180, 190, 216

# С

capacity management 170 Capacity Manager 170, 180, 240 CIM 33, 78, 105, 116, 243, 244 community name 26 CSV 158, 270 Custom 146

# D

DB tables 213, 214, 219 DB2 46, 140, 198, 201 DB2 Node Name 205 default group 117 default groups 105 discovery 72, 73, 74, 76 DMI 33, 116, 191, 244 dynamic group 115, 116

# Ε

EEPROM 191 event filter 104, 125, 126 Extended Attributes 122 extensions 168

## F

Fail 100

# G

genalert 248, 260 genevent 248, 258 group function 265, 277

## I

inventory scan 75

# J

Java class libraries 37

Jet database 46

# Κ

keywords 239

# L

LCCM 35, 36 license key 42 logical operators 221 Lotus 1-2-3 159 Lotus Approach 160 Lotus Notes 109, 110

## Μ

maximum colors 87 maximum resolution 87 MIF 33 MMC 58 mobile 1 modem 179, 180 MPM 105, 122 MPM API 235, 262 MPM parameters 74

# Ν

NetWare 38, 63, 105, 181, 186, 240 Network Time-Out 47 NT Event Log 120, 122, 135

# 0

ODBC 229, 230, 280 ODBC connection 212 OnNow 34 OS/2 103, 105, 181, 186, 235, 240

# Ρ

port 58 POST 180 PXE 35

# R

rack group 237 Remote System Manager 237

# S

Scheduler 90, 95 SDK 1 Sender ID 255, 259 ServeRAID Manager 186, 189 servers 1 SNMP 28, 105, 122 Software Dictionary 149, 153 software distribution 43 Software Rejuvenation 181, 183, 184 SQL 46, 140, 198, 206 SQL services 210 standards 1 Start 100 static groups 105, 108 Stop 100 System DSN 230

# Т

tables 213 TCP/IP 1, 18, 29, 36, 37, 38, 48, 63, 71, 176 threshold 85, 86, 180 ticker tape 73, 128, 258, 284 Trap Destination 24 Traps 29, 33 TWGAdmin 49 twgipc 69 twgipccf 67 TWGSuperAdmins 49

# U

UM Desktop Extensions 163, 174 UM Server Extensions 165, 173 UM Services Extensions 172

## V

variables 131 Vital Product Data 178

## W

win32sl 79 wizard 44, 51, 57, 182 WMI 78 workstations 1

# IBM Redbooks evaluation

Netfinity Director - Integration and Tools SG24-5389-00

Your feedback is very important to help us maintain the quality of IBM Redbooks. Please complete this questionnaire and return it using one of the following methods:

- Use the online evaluation form found at http://www.redbooks.ibm.com/
- Fax this form to: USA International Access Code + 1 914 432 8264
- Send your comments in an Internet note to  ${\tt redbook@us.ibm.com}$

Which of the following best describes you? _ Customer _ Business Partner _ Solution Developer _ IBM employee _ None of the above
Please rate your overall satisfaction with this book using the scale: (1 = very good, 2 = good, 3 = average, 4 = poor, 5 = very poor)
Overall Satisfaction
Please answer the following questions:
Was this redbook published in time for your needs? Yes No
If no, please explain:
What other Redbooks would you like to see published?
Comments/Suggestions: (THANK YOU FOR YOUR FEEDBACK!)

SG24-5389-00 Printed in the U.S.A.

